# Английский язык

О.В. Афанасьева И.В. Михеева

Новый курс английского языка для российских школ

4-й год обучения



Учебник для общеобразовательных учреждений

Допущено Министерством образования и науки Российской Федерации

2-е издание, стереотипное





Visiting the USA

# Step One

# Do It Together

🚺 Listen to this traditional English song and sing along, 🌉 (1).

### One Man Went to Moor

- 1. One man went to moor<sup>2</sup>, Went to moor on meadow3. One man and his dog. One man and his dog Went to moor on meadow.
- 2. Two men went to moor, Went to moor on meadow. Two men, one man, One man and his dog Went to moor on meadow.
- 3. Three men went to moor, Went to moor on meadow. Three men, two men, One man and his dog Went to moor on meadow.



<sup>1 (</sup>the) USA [.ju: es 'et] = the United States of America — Соединенные Штаты

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> a moor [muə] — вересковая пустошь <sup>3</sup> a meadow ['medəu] — луг

- 4. Four men went to moor,
  Went to moor on meadow.
  Four men, three men, two men,
  One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
- 5. Five men went to moor,
  Went to moor on meadow.
  Five men, four men, three men, two men,
  One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
- 6. Six men went to moor,
  Went to moor on meadow.
  Six men, five men, four men, three men, two men,
  One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
- 7. Seven men went to moor,
  Went to moor on meadow.
  Seven men, six men, five men, four men, three men, two men,
  One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
- 8. Eight men went to moor,
  Went to moor on meadow.
  Eight men, seven men, six men, five men, four men,
  three men, two men,
  One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
- 9. Nine men went to moor,
  Went to moor on meadow.
  Nine men, eight men, seven men, six men, five men,
  four men, three men, two men,
  One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
- 10. Ten men went to moor,
  Went to moor on meadow.
  Ten men, nine men, eight men, seven men, six men,
  five men, four men, three men, two men,
  One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
- Complete the tag-questions<sup>1</sup> and answer them.

E x a m p l e: You travelled a lot during your summer holidays, ...?

- You travelled a lot during your summer holidays, didn't you?
- Yes, I did. (No, I didn't. I stayed at home.)

- 1) You didn't go anywhere, ...?
- 2) You stayed in your home town, ...?
- 3) The weather was terrible in the summer, ...?
- 4) It never rained in the summer, ...?
- 5) You often went boating, ...?
- 6) Nobody went with you, ...?
- 7) You didn't make sandcastles on the beach, ...?
- 8) You had a lot of fun, ...?
- 9) You couldn't go abroad, ...?
- 10) Your parents were with you during the summer, ...?
- 11) You weren't in the north of our country, ...?
- 12) You didn't go to the forest much, ...?
- 13) You saw a lot of interesting places, ...?
- 14) You didn't write a diary, ...?
- 15) You invited nobody to visit you, ...?
- You have just come back to school. Tell your friends a few words about your summer holidays. Follow the plan.

### A. If you travelled

- · With whom did you travel?
- · How long did you stay there?
- · What did you do in the morning and in the afternoon?
- · Where did you go in the evening?
- · Did you have fun?
- · What are the places you visited famous for?
- · Where are they situated?
- · What souvenirs did you buy?
- · Were your holidays interesting? boring?

### B. If you stayed in your home town

- · When did you usually get up?
- · What did you do in the morning?
- · Did you go to the forest (river, mountains)?
- · With whom did you go there?
- · What did you do about the house?
- · How much did you read?
- · What games¹ did you play? With whom did you do it?

 $<sup>^1</sup>$  a tag-question = a disjunctive question — разделительный вопрос

<sup>1</sup> a game [geim] — игра

- · Did vou ride a bike?
- · What did you do in the evening?
- · Did vou write a diary?
- · What films did you see?
- · What museums did you visit?
- · Who came to your place?
- · Were your holidays interesting? boring?
- Listen to the tape, (2), and choose the right item.





### Dialogue A

- 1) John went to the USA with ....
- a) Yura 2) People call<sup>1</sup> New York ....
- c) his friends b) his family
- a) "the Big Apple" b) "the Little Apple" c) "the Apple"
- 3) Yura would like to see New York's ....
- a) streets b) bridges
- 4) John's going to Washington, D.C. ....
- a) at the weekend
  - b) on Friday
- c) on Monday

c) skyscrapers<sup>2</sup>

- 5) John is going to send Yura a ....
- a) letter

- b) telegram
- c) postcard

### Dialogue B

- 1) John ... it in New York.
  - a) likes

b) hates

c) doesn't like

- 2) New Yorkers are ....
  - a) selfish

b) kind

c) friendly

- 3) It's raining in ....
  - a) Moscow
- b) New York
- c) Washington, D.C.

- 4) Yesterday's show was ....
  - a) not good
- b) rather good
- c) very good
- 5) John'll ... from Washington, D.C.
  - a) write

- b) go away
- c) call

### Dialogue C

- 1) In Washington, D.C. John is staying ....
  - a) at a hotel
- b) with friends
- c) in an old castle
- 2) John is going to see Washington ....
  - a) in the morning b) in the afternoon
- c) in the evening
- 3) John and Sally are going to see ....
  - a) the White House and the Cathedral
  - b) the White House and the Potomac [pə'təvmæk] River
  - c) the White House and the Capitol
- 4) Yura and Sally are going to the city centre with ....
  - a) their mother
- b) their father
- c) their cousins
- 5) Yura is going to get some of John's ....
  - a) CDs

b) e-mails

- c) photos
- John Barker and his family visited the USA in the summer. He knows a lot about America now. How much do you know about it? Say: true or false.







- 1) New York is the capital of the USA.
- 2) Russians came to America in the 18<sup>th</sup> century.
- 3) America is a country of immigrants.
- 4) Chicago [si'ka:qəv] is situated in the south of the USA.
- 5) There are fifty states in the USA.
- 6) There are fifty stars on the American flag.
- 7) All American states are situated in South America.
- 8) The United States is smaller than Russia.
- 9) The Mississippi is the longest river in the world.
- 10) There are no high mountains in the USA.
- 11) California is a US city.
- 12) Texas ['teksəs] is the biggest state of the USA.

[You can find the right answers at the end of the Unit.]

<sup>1</sup> to call [ko:1] — называть

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> a scyscraper ['skai, skreipə] — небоскреб

<sup>1</sup> a state [steit] — mrar

6 Listen to the tape, [ (3), and repeat.



continent ['kontinent]: Africa is a continent. South America and North America are continents too.

Europe ['juərəp]: Italy, Finland, Spain are situated in Europe.

Asia ['eɪ[ə]: Russia is situated in Europe and Asia.

Australia [p'streɪliə]: Australia is a country and a continent.
nationality [,næʃə'nælɪti]: I am Russian. It is my nationality. John

is English. It is his nationality.

historic [hr'storik]: Red Square is a historic place.

Germany ['d3:məni]: Germany is situated in Europe.

Ireland ['aiələnd]: Ireland is to the west of Great Britain.

Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (4), and repeat.

A.

bring [brin] — приносить, приводить build [bild] — строить moon [mu:n] — луна only ['əunli] — 1) adv только; 2) adj единственный proud [praud] — гордый

skyscraper ['skai,skreipə] — небоскреб state [steit] — 1) штат; 2) государство remember [п'membə] — помнить same [seim] — такой же wild [waild] — дикий

bring — brought [brot]: John brought me a cup of tea. Summer brings warmer weather. We are going to have a party, come and bring your friends. Bring back my book, please.

build — built [bilt]: What is grandpa building? When did they build the new road near your farm? They built it last year.

building: Houses, schools, shops, hotels are buildings.

the moon: the sun and the moon, on the moon. Can you see the moon in the sky?

only: 1) Only Fred can help me. I know only one foreign language.
2) an only child, an only friend. Benny is an only child in the family.

**proud:** a proud man, a proud woman, proud people. He was too proud to go back to his parents' home.

be proud of: Susan is proud of her parents. Alex says he is proud of his job.

skyscraper: Skyscrapers are very high buildings. There are many skyscrapers in New York.

state: 1) How many states are there in the USA? Which is the biggest state? 2) France is a state in Europe.

remember: I never remember when she was born. Do you remember her address? Did you remember to buy bread?

same: the same clothes, the same answer. It's the same old story, I don't want to hear it again.

at the same time: 1) I can't understand what you are saying if you all talk at the same time. 2) Moscow is a very old city. At the same time it is young and modern.

wild: a wild animal, a wild flower. What wild animals do you know?

Match the words in the two columns.

- 1) to be proud of
- 2) to build
- 3) to bring
- 4) to walk on 5) to remember
- a) the moon
- b) the country
- c) the question .
  d) a bridge
- e) a cup of tea

Omplete the sentences. Use the words.

high, historic, only, proud, same, wild

- 1) Ben has no brothers or sisters in the family. He is an ... child.
- 2) Mrs Davidson is ... of her children. They are so talented.
- 3) There are so many ... buildings in New York.

- 4) I am ... to say that John is one of the first pupils in our class.
- 5) The Kremlin is a ... place in Moscow.
- 6) You can see a lot of ... animals in the zoo.
- 7) We can buy this computer I think. The ... problem is we haven't got so much money.
- 8) We are staying at the ... hotel as you.
- 9) It's the ... film that they showed last year.
  - 10) Have you got any ... flowers in your garden?
  - 11) Are there many ... monuments in St. Petersburg?
- 10 A. Read the text and match the titles with the paragraphs. There is one extra paragraph.
- 1. Country of Immigrants
  - 2. New Home for English-Speaking People
  - 3. The Old and the New Hand-in-Hand
  - 4. American Traditions

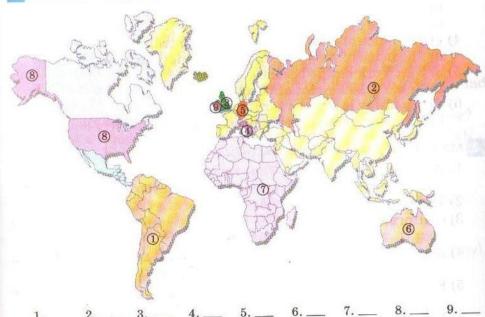
#### The New World

- a) The United States is a young country. It is only a few hundred years old. Millions of people from other countries and continents Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia and South America find their new home in the United States.
- b) The people of the United States are of many different nationalities. These different people brought to the new home their traditions, holidays and festivals. From Germany they brought Christmas trees. From Ireland they brought St. Patrick's Day celebrations. From Scotland they brought Halloween. Americans celebrate the festivals of the Old World. But there are new American festivals and traditions too.
- c) Americans like new ideas. They built the first skyscrapers and they put the first man on the moon. They like to be modern. They enjoy big modern cities, new houses and new cars. At the same time Americans love old things. They like to visit historic houses and museums. They remember their country's history and the days of the "Wild West". Most of them are very proud of their country and love it.
- B. Listen to the tape, (5), and read the text again after it.

- 11 Answer the questions.
  - 1) What is the New World?
  - 2) Why is the USA a country of immigrants?
  - 3) From what continents do immigrants come to the USA?
  - 4) What do immigrants bring with them?
  - 5) Do Americans celebrate only new holidays and festivals?
  - 6) Who put the first man on the moon?
  - 7) Are many Americans patriots? Why do you think so?
- 12 Speak about the people of the USA. Use exercises 10 and 11.

# Do It on Your Own

13 Write what they are.



### 14 Write the English for.

Историческое здание, пятьдесят штатов, вернуть тетрадь, построить мост, высокие небоскребы, полевые цветы, мой единственный друг, тот же ответ, гордиться этой страной, луна и звезды, помнить российскую историю, самое большое государство.

<sup>1</sup> a title ['taɪtl] — название, заголовок

# Step Two

# Do It Together

- Listen to the text "The Big Apple", [ (6), and say which of the sentences are true.
  - 1) a) All jazz musicians wanted to work in Washington, D.C.

b) All jazz musicians wanted to work in New York.

- 2) a) They called New York "The Big Apple" because it was the best city to work in.
  - b) They called New York "The Big Apple" because it was the biggest city in the USA.
- 3) a) More than twelve million people come to visit New York every year.
  - b) More than twenty million people come to visit New York every year.
- 4) a) The name of New York's park is Central Park.
- b) The name of New York's park is Quiet Park.
- 5) a) New York has no beaches.
  - b) New York has a lot of beaches.
- 6) a) Broadway is famous for its shows.
  - b) Broadway is famous because it's five kilometres long.
- Match the items in the columns.
  - 1) Asia
  - 2) Texas
  - 3) California
  - 4) the Potomac River
  - 5) Europe
  - 6) New York
  - 7) Washington, D.C.
  - 8) Australia
  - 9) the Mississippi
  - 10) the USA
  - 11) the New World

- a) The continent where Italy, Spain, France and Germany are situated.
- b) The capital of the USA.
- c) The American state where Hollywood is situated.
- d) One of the biggest states in the USA in the south of the country.
- e) The name of the continent and at the same time of the country.
- f) The continent where India is situated.
- g) The country which has got fifty states.
- h) The city people call "the Big Apple".
- i) The longest river of the USA.
- j) The river on which Washington, D.C. is situated.
- k) North, Central and South America.

### Complete these sentences.

1) I remember the day when ....

2) I remember the place where ....

3) I remember the song which ....

4) I remember the man who ....

- 5) I remember the time when ....
- 6) I remember the book which ....

B.

- 1) I am proud of ....
- 2) My parents are proud of .... 5) We are proud of ....
- 3) My friend is proud of ....

### Answer the questions.

- 1) How many states are there in the USA?
- 2) On what continent is the USA situated?
- 3) People of many nationalities live in the States, don't they?
- 4) In what American cities can you see a lot of tall buildings?
- 5) What do people usually call the tall buildings of New York and Chicago?
- 6) What names of American cities and states do you remember?
- 7) Is Washington and Washington, D.C. the same place (thing)?
- 8) What are Americans proud of?
- 9) What tradition did they bring from Germany?
- 10) What celebration did they bring from Scotland?
- 11) What holiday did they bring from Ireland?

# Say what they built in the city of Norton and when.

Example: They built a bridge in the city Norton in 1840 (eighteen forty).





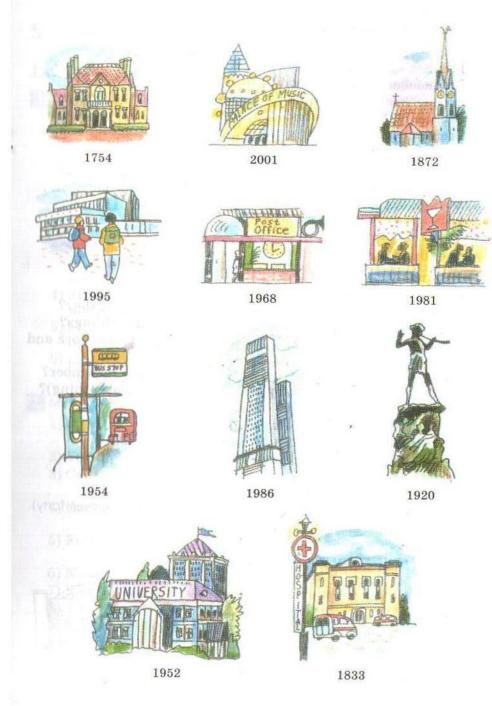


4) My teacher is proud of ....

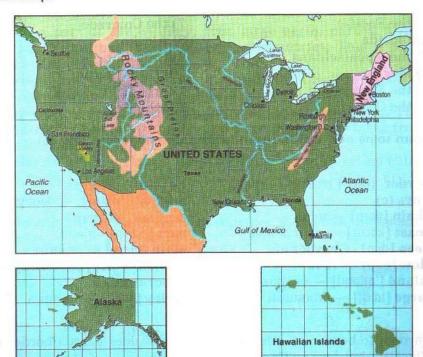
1840

2000

1978



6 Listen to the tape, (7), repeat the names and find these places on the map.



- 1) the United States of America
- 2) Canada ['kænədə]
- 3) Mexico ['meksikəv]
- 4) the Pacific Ocean [pə,sıfik 'əʊʃən] (the Pacific)
- 5) the Atlantic Ocean [ət,læntık 'əʊʃən] (the Atlantic)
  - 6) Alaska [ə'læskə]
- 7) Hawaii [hə'waɪi]
  - 8) the Rocky Mountains [,rpki 'mauntinz]
- 9) the Appalachian [,æpə'leɪʧiən] Mountains (the Appalachians)
- 10) the Grand Canyon [,grænd 'kænjən]
  - 11) the Great Plains
  - 12) Death Valley [,deθ'væli]
  - 13) the Mississippi River (the Mississippi)
- 14) the Colorado [,kplə'ra:dəv] River (the Colorado)
  - 15) the Great Lakes

# Say what they are.

Example: California is a state.

- 1) the Pacific 2) Canada
- 3) the Appalachians
- 4) Mexico
- 5) the Mississippi
- 6) the Ontario

- 7) the Colorado
- 8) Alaska
- 9) Hawaii
- 10) the Atlantic
- 11) the USA
- 12) the Huron

# B Learn some new words. Listen to the tape and repeat, (8).

A.

border (on) ['bɔ:də] — граничить (c)
chain [ʧeɪn] — цепь
coast [kəʊst] — побережье
deep [di:p] — глубокий
flow [fləʊ] — течь
island ['aɪlənd] — остров
large [lɑ:ф] — большой

lie [lai] — лежать mighty ['maiti] — могущественный, могучий part [pɑ:t] — часть plain [plein] — равнина stretch [stretf] — тянуться, простираться valley ['væli] — долина

B

border: to border on sth. What countries does Russia border on? The USA borders on Canada in the North.

chain: a golden chain, a chain of mountains. That day Anne had a beautiful chain round her neck. The Urals are a chain of mountains situated in Europe and Asia.

coast: the Atlantic coast, on the coast. My town is situated on the coast.

deep: a deep river, a deep lake. My younger brother is afraid to swim in deep water. How deep is this canyon?

flow: to flow west, to flow north, to flow into the ocean. The Volga flows into the Caspian Sea. The Colorado flows south.

island: an island in the ocean, a chain of islands. What islands are situated to the east of Russia? I can take you to the island in a boat.

large: a large city, a large family. We stayed in a large hotel on the sea coast.

lie — lay [lei]: to lie on the sofa, to lie on the river. He lay down on the floor. The farm lay three kilometres from the sea.

mighty: a mighty river, a mighty king. The Mississippi is a mighty river in the US. We hope that Russia will always be a mighty country.

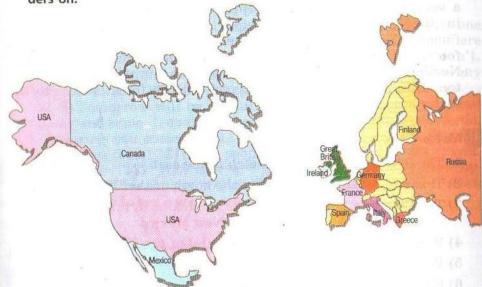
part: a part of the country, four large parts, part of the time. Great Britain has four parts or four countries. This is the most beautiful part of the garden.

plain: a low plain, the Great Plains of the US. The Great Plains are situated in the western central part of the country.

stretch: to stretch far, to stretch west, to stretch north. The forest stretched as far as the eye could see. Russia stretches from the Pacific Ocean to the Baltic Sea.

valley: a green valley, a deep valley, lily-of-the-valley (lilies-of-the-valley). There is a river lying in the valley. Valleys are usually situated in the mountains.

9 A. Look at the map and say what countries: a) the USA, b) Canada borders on.



### B. Answer the questions.

- 1) Germany borders on France, doesn't it?
- 2) France borders on Spain, doesn't it?
- 3) Spain doesn't border on Italy, does it?
- 4) Germany borders on Russia, doesn't it?
- 5) Greece doesn't border on Italy, does it?

### C. Say

- 1) what country Russia borders on in the north-west
- 2) what country Great Britain borders on in the west
- 3) what country Spain borders on in the north
- 4) what country Germany borders on in the south-west
- 5) what country the USA borders on in the south
- 10 Use the new words and complete the sentences.

chain, islands, lies, large(2), largest, flows, parts, stretching, lily-of-the-valley, deep, deepest, coast, plains

1) The ... is a beautiful spring flower. 2) There are a lot of ... in the Pacific Ocean. 3) The Baikal is the ... lake in the world. 4) Masha spent her holidays on the Black Sea ... 5) Moscow is a very ... city. 6) The Mississippi is a ... river, it is the ... river in the USA. 7) The Mississippi ... south. 8) The Urals is a famous ... of mountains. 9) Is the Volga a ... river? 10) There are four ... in Great Britain. They are England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. 11) Are there any ... in Europe? 12) Washington, D.C. ... on the Potomac River. 13) The forest was ... to the east.

### 11 Match them.

- 1) The Great Lakes
- 2) Texas
- 3) The Colorado
- 4) Washington
- 5) Washington, D.C.
- 6) Florida
- 7) The Appalachians
- 8) The Rocky Mountains

- a) stretch in the east
- b) lie in the north of the USA
- c) borders on Mexico in the south like Arizona and New Mexico
- d) is the capital of the USA
- e) stretch along1 the coast
- f) is a state in the north-west
- g) flows south
- h) lies in the south of the USA



### **Focus**

В английском языке есть два похожих слова other и another, которые следует различать.

Another означает 1) «другой», «еще один», «дополнительный» (I'd like another cup of tea, please.) и 2) «другой», «иной» (Give me another cup of tea, please. I don't like this one.). Местоимение another используется только с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе: another day, another place, another man.

Other означает 1) «другие», «дополнительные» (You are my good friend. I have no *other* friends.) и 2) «другие», «иные» (Let's go to the zoo or do you have *other* plans?). Слово *other* обычно используется с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе: other pupils, other places, other traditions. Сочетание **other** + **существительное** в речи часто заменяется словом **others**. Например, I'd like to meet other teachers too. = I'd like to meet *others* too.

### 12 Complete the sentences. Use another, other, others.

1) I can't talk to you now. Come ... day, please. 2) I have just one sandwich. May I have ... one? 3) This is a very bad road. Are there ... roads to the castle? 4) Some people like fish and ... don't.

5) There is ... big river in this part of Scotland. 6) Are there any ... mountains in Wales? 7) I can carry this big bag and some ... too. 8) Tomorrow will be ... sunny day. 9) We are going to visit France and some ... countries too. 10) If you like these postcards, I can bring you some ... . 11) Where are my ... exercise-books? I can't find them. 12) Some people travel by train, ... like travelling by car. 13) "Tom Sawyer" is a book about a young boy. ... book about a boy is "Oliver Twist". 14) After going to New York I'd like to see some ... towns in the USA.

# Do It on Your Own

13 Ask for more things. Use the words from the box.

box, bag, cup, carton<sup>1</sup>, jug, plate

- 1) Can I have another ... of coffee?
- 2) Can we ask for another ... of milk?

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> along [ə'lɒŋ] — вдоль

<sup>1</sup> a carton ['kɑ:tn] — пакет (картонная упаковка для продуктов)

- 3) Have you got another ... of sugar?
- 4) May I have another ... of chalk, please?
- 5) I'd like to buy another ... of pears.
- 6) Will you give me another ... of orange juice?
- 7) I'd like another ... of ham and eggs, please.
- 8) Could I have another ... of chocolates?
- 9) Could you give me another ... of tea?
- 10) Have you got another ... of pencils?
- See how well you know geography of the USA. Give it a name.
  - 1) Five big lakes in the north of the USA.
  - 2) The largest city in the USA.
  - 3) The biggest river of the USA.
- 4) The chain of mountains in the east of the USA.
  - 5) The chain of mountains in the west of the USA.
  - 6) The biggest state of the USA.

2. Fred

- 7) The capital of the USA.
- 8) The plains which are situated in the central part of the USA.

# Step Three

# Do It Together

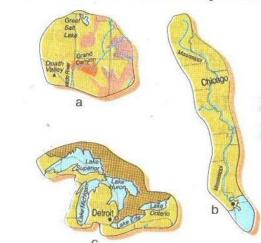
Listen to the tape, [ (9), and say what places in the USA they visited.

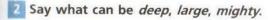


1. Robert



3. Jim





- 1) (a) deep forest, ..., ..., ..., ..., ...
- 2) (a) large continent, ..., ..., ..., ..., ...
- 3) (a) mighty queen, ..., ...
- Match the pictures with the words and word combinations.
  - a) a golden chain
  - b) a lily-of-the-valley
  - c) a part of the apple
  - d) the Atlantic coast
- e) a deep valley
- f) a plain
- g) a chain of mountains

















Complete the sentences with the missing words.

lie, lies, flow, flows, flowed, stretch, stretched

1) Washington, D.C. ... on the Potomac River. 2) The Great Plains ... to the east of the Rocky Mountains. 3) The Volga ... from the Valdai Hills to the Caspian Sea. 4) The road ... ahead for miles. 5) Did the river ... into the sea? - No, it didn't. It ... into the lake. 6) Kazan and Samara ... on the Volga.

A. Read the text and say what information about American geography you knew/didn't know before you read the text.

# The United States of America

The United States of America is the world's fourth largest country. Only Russia, Canada and China have bigger territories ['teritoriz] than the US. There are fifty states in the country. Forty-eight are in the same part of North America. The other two are Alaska in the north, and Hawaii situated on eight islands in the Pacific.

The United States stretches from the Pacific Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean, which wash the country in the west and in the east. Long mountain chains run down the Pacific coast. In this part of the country is Death Valley, the lowest place in North and South Americas. Here, too, is the Grand Canyon which the Colorado River made millions of years ago. In some places it is about 6 km deep. Farther east lie the tall peaks of the Rocky Mountains that run from Canada to Mexico. Beyond them stretch the Great Plains where the mighty Mississippi River flows. Another mountain chain, the Appalachians, runs down the eastern part of the United States. The USA borders on Canada in the north, where the five Great Lakes are situated, and Mexico in the South.

B. Listen to the tape, (10), and read the text again after it.



6	Match	the	two	co	lumns.
38,549	IAICITCII	CITE	CAAO	CU	ullillia.

Match the two columns.	
1) The USA	a) the American state situated on the islands.
2) Alaska	b) the chain of mountains in the east of the USA.
3) Hawaii	c) the ocean that washes the USA in the east.
4) The Pacific Ocean	d) a very deep cut in the ground <sup>1</sup> .
5) The Atlantic Ocean	e) the country that borders on the US in the north.
6) Death Valley	f) the fourth largest country in the world.
7) The Grand Canyon	g) a mighty river that flows through the Great Plains.
8) The Mississippi	h) the lowest place in North America.
9) The Rocky Mountains	i) the American state situated in the far north.
10) The Appalachian Mountains	j) the ocean that washes the USA in the west.
11) Canada	k) the chain of mountains in the west of the USA.
12) Mexico	l) the country that borders on

#### Focus

# The Present Perfect Tense (Настоящее совершенное время)

1. Описать событие, о котором известно, когда оно произошло, можно, используя знакомое вам время past simple.

the US in the south.

I washed the dishes an hour ago.

Если же неизвестно или не важно, когда совершено какое-либо действие, а важен его результат, который связан с моментом речи/с настоящим, используется время present perfect ['ps:fikt].

<sup>1</sup> cut in the ground [graund] — разлом земной коры

Действие:

Результат:

Я вымыла посуду. → Посуда вымыта, она чистая.

(когда — неизвестно, неважно)

Джон разбил вазу. → Ваза разбита.

(Вазы нет, есть только осколки.)

2. Образуется present perfect при помощи вспомогательного глагола have/ has и третьей формы основного глагола V.

### have/has + V<sub>3</sub>

Для правильных глаголов эта форма  $V_3$  совпадает с формой прошедшего времени.

1	II	III
answer	answered	answered
cook	cooked	cooked
visit	visited	visited
finish	finished	finished

I have answered the question. — Я ответил на вопрос. (Результат: мой ответ известен.)

Mum has cooked supper. — Мама приготовила ужин. (Результат: ужин готов.)

John has visited the USA. — Джон посетил США. (Результат: у Джона есть представление об этой стране.)

We have finished the work. — Мы закончили работу, (Результат: работа завершена.)

3. У неправильных глаголов эту форму  $V_3$  нужно запомнить. Ты найдешь ее в таблице неправильных глаголов. Для начала запомни формы глаголов to see и to be.

l l	11 /	III	
see	saw	seen	
be	was/were •	been	

Nick has seen a lot of French films. We have been to Australia. We like it.

Обрати внимание на то, что с глаголом be в этом времени часто употребляется предлог to.

I have been **to** Moscow. — Я бывал **в** Москве. She has been **to** London. — Она бывала **в** Лондоне. Make up sentences.

I We My friend Jane They These people You and I seen al visited cleaned been to watche asked a cooked finished decided

played football before.
seen all the new films.
visited the best museums of the town.
cleaned the classroom.
been to the city centre.
watched the news on TV.
asked a lot of questions.
cooked a very good dinner.
finished the work.
decided to have a holiday.
started to write a diary.
listened to some very good songs.

### Say what has happened.

E x a m p l e: Sam. His shoes are clean. (clean) Sam has cleaned his shoes.

- 1) James. His car is clean. (wash)
- 2) Kate. Her plants look green and fresh<sup>1</sup>. (water)
- 3) Mum and dad. Their bedroom window is open. (open)
- 4) The children. They are not doing their homework. They are playing in the garden.

  (finish)
- 5) Mary. She knows what the film is about. (see)
- 6) My friends. They know what the British Museum is like. (visit)
- 7) Emma. Her hands are clean. (wash)
- 8) The Smiths. They know where they'll spend their weekend. (decide)
- 9) Margo. There is a lot of food in her fridge. (be to the shops)
- 10) Jake. His supper is ready. (cook)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> fresh [fref] — свежий

# 9 Today Cinderella is very tired. Can you say why?

Example: She has washed her sisters' clothes.



- 1) wash, 2) carry, 3) clean, 4) cook, 5) clean, 6) work, 7) wash,
- 8) wash, 9) be, 10) water, 11) walk, 12) paint



Say what places they have been to (seen, visited) and what places they are going to see.

Example: 1) Ted — New York — Washington, D.C.

Ted has been to New York. He is going to visit Washington, D.C.

- 2) Roy and Alice France Germany
- Roy and Alice have been to France. They are going to see Germany.
- 3) John California Washington
- 4) Billy and Beth Canada Mexico
- 5) Harry the Appalachians the Rocky Mountains
- 6) The Moles the Mississippi the Colorado
- 7) Miss Robertson Alaska Hawaii
- 8) Ann Florida the Great Plains
- 9) The friends the Atlantic Ocean the Pacific Ocean
- 10) Kitty and David South America North America
- 11) My cousins the Pacific Coast the Atlantic Coast

# Do It on Your Own

Complete the sentences.

1) Julia (has/have) visited the Grand Canyon. 2) Ed and his sister (has/have) travelled about the Atlantic Coast. 3) My cousins (has/ have) seen "The Big Apple". 4) John (has/have) played five games of tennis. 5) The Richardsons (has/have) been to the Great Lakes. 6) Alice (has/have) listened to the song "America, the Beautiful". She likes it. 7) Boris (has/have) walked in Central Park of New York. Now he knows what it is like. 8) Kim's parents (has/have) been to the Rocky Mountains. 9) We (has/have) seen the Appalachians. They are great. 10) You (has/have) washed your hands. You may sit down to table.

12 Write what is missing in the text.

### The States

1) The ... is the fourth largest country in the world stretching from the ... Ocean in the east to the ... west. 2) It is situated in ... America. 3) It borders on ... in the north and on ... in the south. 4) There are a lot of mountains in the USA. The highest and largest are the ... in the west. 5) The ... are in the east, they are lower and older. 6) The mighty ... is the longest river in the USA. Some other rivers flow into it. 7) The ... Lakes in the north of the USA are very deep. The ... Lake is the largest and the ... Lake is the smallest. 8) ... is the capital of the USA. It is situated on the ... River.

# Step Four

# Do It Together

Listen to the song, 📖 (11), and sing along.

# Billy Boy

Oh, where have you been, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, Oh where have you been, Charming Billy?

I have been to seek a wife,
She's the joy of my life,
She's a young thing
And cannot leave her mother.

Очаровашка Билли искать

молоденькая

Did she ask you to come in, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, Did she ask you to come in, Charming Billy? Yes, she asked me to come in, There's a dimple in her chin, She's a young thing And cannot leave her mother.

ямочка на подбородке

печь, испечь; вишневый пирог

моргать

Can she bake a cherry pie,
Billy Boy, Billy Boy,
Can she bake a cherry pie,
Charming Billy?
She can bake a cherry pie,
Quick as you can wink an eye,
She's a young thing
And cannot leave her mother.

Can she make a feather ['feðə] bed, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, Can she make a feather bed, Charming Billy? She can make a feather bed, While standing on her head, She's a young thing And cannot leave her mother.

перо, перьевая

стоя на голове

How tall is she, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, How tall is she, Charming Billy?
She is tall as any pine,
And as straight as a pumpkin vine,
She's a young thing
And cannot leave her mother.

сосна

плеть тыквы

How old is she, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, How old is she, Charming Billy? She is sixty times eleven, Twenty-eight and forty-seven, She's a young thing And cannot leave her mother.

660

2 A. Say under what categories these words go and where you must use the article "the". Check, (12).

?	Mexico
	Alaska
?	Washington, D.C.
	Hawaii
?	Atlantic
?	USA
	Texas
?	Asia
	Grand Canyon
	Death Valley
	Rockies
	Pacific
	Great Plains
	New York
	California
	Superior
	Mississippi
	Canada
	Washington
?	Appalachians Ontario
?	Huron
?	Big Apple
?	Potomac

Continents:	
Oceans:	
Countries:	
States:	
Cities:	
Lakes:	
Rivers:	
Mountain chains:	
Others:	

B. Say what you know about these places.

Say where you have been in your country and abroad.

Example: I have been to Kiev. We have been to Tarasovka.

Look at the pictures and say what games the children have finished playing.











# Say what has happened.

Example: Nick has opened the window.

























6 Say how we can form negations in present perfect.

I have been to London. We have been Washington. You have been to Boston. They have been to Chicago.

She has been to the Great Lakes.

He has been to the USA.

I have not been to Moscow. We have not been to Oxford. You have not been to Leeds. They have not been to New York.

She has not been to Miami.

He has not been to Spain.

I haven't seen the Pacific. We haven't seen the Atlantic. They haven't seen the Ontario.

She hasn't seen the Potomac. He hasn't seen the Colorado. You haven't seen the Huron.

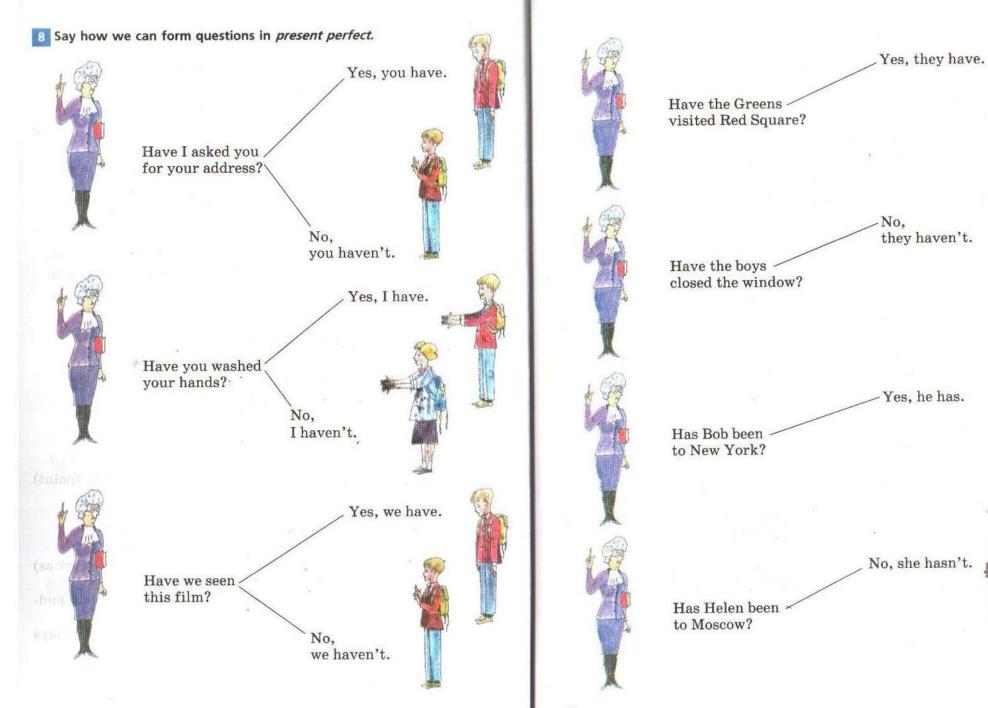
Say what these people have not done.

Example: Max's boots are dirty. (clean) Max hasn't (has not) cleaned his boots.

- 1) Mr Porter's work is not ready. (finish)
- 2) Julia doesn't know what New York is like. (be)
- 3) Mrs Johnson's plants are dry. (water)
- 4) I don't know if Peter is at school today. (see)
- 5) The paint on the walls in Paul's kitchen is old and dark. (paint)
- 6) Polly's cups and plates are unwashed. (wash)
- 7) Jerry hasn't seen the news on television today. (watch)
- 8) Mary and I are thinking about what film to see. (decide)
- 9) Most of us don't know how to play baseball. (play)
- 10) Jim doesn't know what the job of a journalist is like. (work as)
- 11) I'd like to know if the "Star" is a good hotel. (stay)
- 12) Samantha [sə'ma:nθə] can't teach you to make chocolate pudding. (cook)
- 13) My son wants to read "Hamlet", one of the most famous plays written by W. Shakespeare. (read)

<sup>1</sup> negation [ni'qeifən] — отрицание

<sup>2-</sup>Афанасьева, 8 кл.



# 9 Answer these questions.

- 1) Have you been to Moscow?
- 2) Have you seen Red Square?
- 3) Have you travelled a lot this year?
- 4) Has your father visited the USA?
- 5) Has your mother cooked pizza?
- 6) Have you played baseball?
- 7) Have your friends played tennis?
- 8) Have you helped your parents a lot this year?
- 9) Have you seen any of the Harry Potter films?
- 10) Have you asked your parents "difficult" questions?

#### Focus

Запомни три формы следующих глаголов.

1	11	III
do	did	done [dʌn]
begin	began	begun [bi'gʌn]
ring	rang	rung [rʌŋ]
run	ran	run [rʌn]
swim	swam	SWIIM ISWAMI
come	came	come [k <sub>A</sub> m]
become	became	become [bi'knm]

10 Ann helps Mrs Hicks about the house. She does everything Mrs Hicks asks her to do very quickly¹. Complete their dialogues.

A

Mrs Hicks: Ann, ring up the post-office about the letter, please.

Ann (in several minutes): I have done it, Mrs Hicks. I have rung the post-office. They know about the letter.

B

Mrs Hicks: Ann, do my bedroom, please.

Ann (in half an hour): Mrs Hicks, I ... . Your bedroom is clean.

C.

Mrs Hicks: Ann, begin cooking lunch, please.

Ann: I..., Mrs Hicks. I am making some chicken soup now.

Mrs Hicks: Ann, go shopping but come back quickly.

Ann (in 40 minutes): I... back from the shop, Mrs Hicks. Now we've got all the vegetables you wanted.

Elizabeth Foster has six children. Say what their jobs are.

Example: Eliza has become a doctor.







Rob

Polly

12 Say how many a) kilometres they have run, b) metres they have swum.

E x a m p l e: a) Boris — 10. Boris has run ten kilometres.

b) Helen — 25. Helen has swum twenty-five metres.

Colin

a)  $\begin{array}{lll} {\rm Bob-2} & & {\rm b)} \; {\rm Emma-50} \\ {\rm Frank-4} & & {\rm Jane-100} \\ {\rm Sarah-1} & & {\rm Samantha-150} \\ {\rm Andy-5} & & {\rm Toby-200} \\ {\rm Tracy-3} & & {\rm Mark-125} \end{array}$ 

# Do It on Your Own

# 13 Complete the sentences. Use present perfect.

1) Mrs Johnson (become) a writer. 2) Bob and Charles (be) to the States many times. 3) You (swim) in the Pacific? 4) We (not, do) our lessons. 5) I (not, remember) all their traditions. 6) The girls (jump) high. Their results are very good. But they (run) 5 kilometres badly. 7) Betty (begin) learning English. 8) Polly (ring up) Doctor Gordon? 9) Boris (come) back? — No, he hasn't. He never comes back earlier than six. 10) Jane says she (not, see) any of the Harry Potter films.

<sup>1</sup> quickly ['kwɪkli] — быстро

# 14 Here are some answers. What are the questions? Use present perfect.

- 1) ...? Yes, I have. I rang up granny in the morning.
- 2) ...? Yes, he has. He came home at 6.
- 3) ...? Yes, they have. They did their homework in the afternoon.
- 4) ...? Yes, we have. We swam in the lake in summer.
- $5) \dots$ ? Yes, she has. She began learning English when she was eight.
- 6) ...? Yes, I have. I became a teacher long ago.
- 7) ...? Yes, they have. They visited the British Museum when they were in London.
- 8) ...? Yes, she has. She cooked the chicken after work.
- 9) ...? Yes, he has. He saw this film some time ago.
- 10) ...? Yes, we have. We were in Vladimir last summer.

# Step Five

# Do It Together

Listen to the tape, (13), and say where Captain Drake has and hasn't been.

	Yes	No
Asia		
India		280
China		
Australia		
Sydney		
North America	,	
South America		
Brazil	*	
Venezuela		

# Say why they are happy. Use present perfect.

- James is happy because he (do) his homework and can go to the dinema with his friends.
  - 2) Peter is happy because he (swim) 100 metres in two minutes.

- 3) Samantha and Jenny are happy because the bell (ring). There are no more classes and they can go home.
- 4) Tom and Roy are happy because they (see) a film with their favourite actor, Jackie Chan.
- 5) Pauline is happy because her mum (come) home early today and they are having dinner together.
- 6) Jack is happy because he (become) captain of his football team<sup>1</sup>.
- 7) Mary and Kate (be) to New York. Now they know a lot about this city.
- 8) Anna is happy because she (begin) learning French.
- 9) Peter is happy because he (arrive) at school on time. He is usually late.
- 10) Julia is happy because she (play) her favourite sonata on the piano very well.



### **Focus**

Present Perfect часто используется с наречиями already [э:l'redi] (уже), ever (когда-нибудь), just (только что), never (никогда), yet (еще), которые служат своеобразными указателями этого времени и в предложении обычно стоят после вспомогательного перед основным глаголом. Yet может употребляться и в конце предложения.

I have already done it. — Я это уже сделал.

He has just come. — Он только что пришел.

They have never seen her. — Они ее никогда не видели.

We haven't visited Mexico yet. — Мы еще не посетили Мексику.



Have you ever been to the USA? — Вы когда-нибудь бывали в США?

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> a team [ti:m] — команда

Mr Morgan lives in Spain. He has never been to South or North America but he has travelled a lot in Europe. Work in pairs, ask Mr Morgan questions and answer these questions for him.

Mexico, Death Valley, Covent Garden, Trafalgar Square, the Tretyakov Gallery, the Hermitage, Milan, the Grand Canyon, Washington, D.C., the Great Lakes, Buckingham Palace, the Rocky Mountains, the Seine

E x a m p l e: — Have you ever been to Seattle?

- No, I haven't. I have never been to Seattle.
- Have you ever seen the Louvre?
- Yes, I have. I have just come from Paris.





#### Focus

Запомни три формы следующих неправильных глаголов.

1	H	TH
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]
write	wrote	written
speak	spoke	spoken
take	took	taken
eat	ate [et]	eaten
fall	fell	fallen

Mary loves travelling. Look at the map and say where she has and hasn't been in the USA.





- 5 Ask and answer the questions.
  - 1) Have you ever written a letter abroad?
  - 2) Have you ever read books by English writers?
  - 3) Have you ever spoken to English people or Americans?
  - 4) Have you ever eaten traditional English or American food?
  - 5) Have you ever fallen in love with a town or a city in Russia or abroad?
  - 6) Have you ever taken photos of interesting or unusual buildings and monuments?
  - 7) Have you ever given your friends pictures as a souvenir?
  - 8) Have you ever been abroad?
  - 9) Have you ever done foreign towns and cities?
  - 10) Which of these things would you like to do?
- 6 A. Learn to form special questions in present perfect.

Where have you been?
What have we done?
How many books have they read?
How much porridge has the dog eaten?
How well have they learnt the poem?
Whose pen have I taken?
Why has he come?
Who(m) has she seen?

<sup>1</sup> to fall in love — влюбиться

### B. Complete the dialogues and act them out.

- 1) Have you been to the US?
  - Yes, ....
  - What cities ...?
  - I have visited Washington, D.C. and some small towns on the Atlantic Coast.
- 2) Have you read any of the Harry Potter books?
  - Yes, ....
  - How many books ...?
  - I have read three books.
  - What books ...?
  - ... "Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone".

("Harry Potter and the Chamber ['tjembə] of Secrets", "Harry Potter and the Prisoner ['prizənə] of Azkaban", "Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire", "Harry Potter and the Half-Blood Prince".)

- 3) Has Frank taken any pictures?
  - Yes, ....
  - How many pictures of the school building has he ...?
  - ..., I think.
- 4) Has Harrison spoken to Robert?
  - Yes, I think he ....
  - Has he given him the photos?
  - Yes, ....
  - What photos ...?
  - I don't know.

# Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

A.

Example: — Who has been to the cinema?

— Mr Hopper has.



Mr Hopper



Mr Blake

1) Who has written the letter?



Emma

2) Who has read the book?



Mrs Gordon and Polly

3) Who has taken the umbrellas with them?



the girls

4) Who has played the piano?



Lizzy

5) Who has given Rex the bone?



Mr Ford

6) Who has spoken to the people in the hall?



Sally and Terry

7) Who has eaten all the porridge?



E x a m p l e: — Mr Hopper hasn't been to the cinema, has he? — (But) yes, he has./No, he hasn't.

1) Mr Blake has written the letter, hasn't he?

2) Emma hasn't read the book, has she?

3) The girls have played the piano, haven't they?

4) Mrs Gordon and Polly haven't taken umbrellas with them, have they?

5) Lizzy has given a bone to the dog, hasn't she?

6) Mr Ford has spoken to the people in the hall, hasn't he?

7) Sally and Terry haven't eaten their porridge, have they?

8 A. Read Kate's letter to Tanya and say what places Kate has visited in Washington, D.C.

### Kate's Letter

8/23/04 Holiday Inn Washington, D.C.

Dear Tanya,

I am writing to you to tell you about our stay in Washington, D.C. You have asked me to write about the US capital. So I am doing it in this letter. We really love the city. It is so green and so clean. It is situated on the Potomac River, on a piece [pis] of land called the District of Columbia [kə'lʌmbiə], which is why people call the







US capital Washington, D.C. It is not the biggest city in the United States, but it is the most important.

The buildings are not very tall, the streets and avenues ['ævɪnjuːz] are straight, green and beautiful. The longest and the biggest avenues are named after¹ American states. We have already done the centre of the city. We have been to the White House and seen the Capitol. The Capitol is really great. This is where the United States Congress meets and makes laws².

The building of the White House is very beautiful with tall columns ['kpləmz] and the flag on the roof. It is the US president's residence. This is where the president lives and works. It is one of the most famous buildings in the world. Its name comes from the fact that it is a white house. Tourists can't see the part where the

<sup>2</sup> a law [lo:] — закон

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> a piece of land called — кусок земли под названием

<sup>1</sup> are named after — названы по

president lives, but they can see the Red Room, the Blue Room and the Green Room and some other rooms. By the way, the city is famous for its museums. I have been to the Natural History Museum but I haven't seen the others yet.

Love,

Kate

B. Listen to the tape, (14), and read the text "Kate's Letter" again after it.

- Read out what the text says about.
  - a) the Capitol
- b) the White House
- Answer the questions on the text from ex. 8.

1) What is Washington and what is Washington, D.C.?

2) Do you think there are many parks, trees and flowers in Washington, D.C.? Why do you think so?

3) On what river is the US capital situated?

4) Why do people call their capital Washington, D.C.?

5) Are there any skyscrapers in Washington, D.C.?

6) In what building do American Congressmen work? What do they do there?

7) What colour is the US President's residence?

8) Can tourists visit all the rooms in the White House? What places can't they visit?

9) Are there any famous museums in Washington, D.C.?



# Social English

Learn to speak about your likes and dislikes in English.

Likes:

I really enjoy/like/love ... I rather enjoy/like/love ...

I've always enjoyed/liked/loved...

I'm (rather) fond of ...

I think ... is (are)

great wonderful lovely enjoyable very nice

Dislikes:

I'm afraid I don't like ...

I can't say I like ...

I've never liked ...

I (really) hate ... I can't stand ...

I don't think ... is (are)

good nice

wonderful

bad I think ... is (are) horrible awful

### 12 Say what you feel about

- · skiing and skating
- · old cars • rain

- · shopping for food
- shopping for clothes cold winters travelling
- · pop songs

· cats

- · strong coffee
- · milk chocolate
- spiders
- · black-and-white films
- · doing your flat
- porridge
- · taking pictures
- autumn
- roller skating
- · washing up

# 13 Act out dialogues about your likes and dislikes.

Example:

A: What do you feel about pets?

B: I'm rather fond of them.

A: And what pets do you like?

B: I've always liked dogs. I think they are very nice.

pets

sports

animals

food

school subjects

hobbies

working about the house

# Do It on Your Own

14 Complete the sentences. Use present perfect.

come, write, become, eat, fall, do, read, take, give, see

1) What's your cousin's job? — He ... just ... a photographer.

2) Do you know how to make porridge? - I'm afraid I don't. I ... never ... it before.

3) What are you doing? - I'm writing Christmas cards. I ... ... two and now I'm writing the third one.

4) What's the dog playing with? — I ... ... him my tennis ball.

5) What's the matter? - I ... just ... down. Look at my clothes! They look awful!

6) I am going out, mum. — ... you ... your umbrella? It's raining.

7) Autumn ... . — Yes, it has. The leaves are falling off the trees.

8) What are you looking at? — This beautiful flower. I ... never ... such flowers before.

9) Tell us the poet's biography, Peter. — Sorry, sir, I ... not ... the book.

10) What is goulash ['gu:la:] like? - I don't know. I... never ... it.

# 15 Write ten true sentences. Use present perfect.

Example: I have read the Harry Potter books many times.



English a Global Language

# Step One

# Do It Together

Listen to the tape, (15), and complete the text.

# The English Language

More people speak English than any other language except<sup>1</sup> (1). People speak English in Britain, Ireland, (2), New Zealand, (3) and some other countries. Altogether2 more than (4) million people speak English as their everyday language. Another (5) million or more speak English as a foreign language. Most English words come from old Anglo-Saxon3, 60 or 7 words. Some people think that the English language is one of the richest languages of the world and has up to a (8) words.

# Explain why it is so.

Example: — There are no pies on the plate. John (eat).

- John has eaten them.

1) - Their house is now yellow!

- Yes, they (paint) ....

1 except [ik'sept] — кроме

<sup>2</sup> altogether [,ɔ:ltə'geðə] — в целом

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Anglo-Saxon [,æŋgləʊ'sæksən] — the language of the Anglo-Saxons, the people who lived in England in early times, from about 600 AD.

— I think he does. He (be) ... there many times.

3) - John, your car looks so clean!

— It should be. I (wash) ....

4) - Your grandparents are tired.

- Yes, they (come) back from the shops.

5) — Does Harry know about it?

- Yes, I (give) ... him a call.

6) — Is the book interesting?

— I don't know yet. I just (begin) ... reading it.

7) — Why is Jason in hospital?

— He (fall) ... off his bike.

8) — Roy knows nothing about our meeting.

- Sorry. I (not, speak) ... to him yet.



# **Focus**

Запомни, что у следующих глаголов вторая и третья формы совпадают.

1	Н .	III
catch	// caught	caught
teach	taught	 taught
bring	brought	brought
buy	bought	bought
fight	fought	fought
think	thought	thought
build	built	built
send	sent	sent
spend	spent	spent
meet	met	met
leave	left	left
find	found	found
get	got	got
have	had	had

- Look at the pictures and answer the questions.
  - 1) What has Frank bought for his little sister?
  - 2) What has Polly just brought home?
- 3) What have the children found?
  4) What has little Bob built?



5) Whom have the Morgans met?

6) Has Jim had an apple? What has he just had?

7) Where have the friends left for?

8) What has Tom caught?

9) How many letters and how many postcards has Lena sent to her granny?

10) How much money have the girls spent on books?

Work in pairs. You have a lot of things to do. Write a plan and tick what you have already done. Tell your friend about your day.

Example: I have washed up after breakfast.
I haven't bought bread and milk yet.



### **Focus**

Present perfect часто употребляется со следующими словами и словосочетаниями:

this morning

this week

this evening

this month

today this year

I haven't seen Victor this morning. (Утро еще не закончилось.) We have been to Moscow this month. (Месяц еще не завершен.)

### Ask your friends

- 1) what places they have visited this year
- 2) what books they have read this week
- 3) what they have bought this month
- 4) what they have written today
- 5) where they have been this week
- 6) what films they have seen this month
- 7) whom they have spoken to today
- 8) what they have eaten today

Say what you haven't done this year, this week, this month, today but would like to do.

Example: I haven't travelled much this year. I would like to go to England and France next year.



### Focus

**Если** надо узнать, совершил ли уже кто-то какое-либо действие или нет, в конце вопроса в *present perfect* часто используется наречие **yet**.

Have you been to the bank yet? — Вы уже были в банке? Have you done your room yet? — Ты уже убрал в комнате? Has he come yet? — Он уже пришел?

Иногда в подобных вопросах можно также встретить наречие already.

John, have you been to the bank already? — Ты что, уже в банке побывал? Have you already eaten all the cake, Ann? — Ты что, уже весь пирог съела, Аня?

Как видишь, задающий Джону и Ане эти вопросы скорее выражает свое удивление или недоумение.

When Jim comes home after school, there is nobody in. His mother usually calls him to ask if he has done what he should do. What are her questions?

Example: (have dinner) — Jim, have you had dinner yet?

- 1) to change clothes
- 2) to read the textbook
- 3) to do the exercises
- 4) to listen to the English tapes
- 5) to play the piano
- 6) to water the flowers
- 7) to ring up granny
- 8) to work on the computer
- 9) to take Rex out
- 10) to give milk to the cat
- B A. Read the text and say what the figures 450,000; 35,000; 10,000—12,000 mean in it.

### Words... Words... Words...

We say them, we hear them, we read them and write them. And telephones, mobiles, radios, televisions, computers are all there to carry words to all parts of the world — and even to the moon and back. How many words must a language have? For example<sup>2</sup>, there are more than 450,000 words in Webster's Third New International Dictionary. No person ['p3:sən] knows all of them, but most people are able to understand about 35,000

 $<sup>^1</sup>$  a figure ['figə] — цифра

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> for example — например

and use about 10,000-12,000. Usually you use only one-tenth (1/10) as many words as you understand.

If you hear or read a new word and want to know what it means, you look the word up in a dictionary. Modern dictionaries are very different. Most of them give words alphabetically. With the word they give information about how to pronounce [prə'navns] it, what meaning or meanings it has, if there are any difficulties in its grammar and use. There are three big categories ['kætɪgərɪz] of dictionaries: monolingual [ˌmɒnəʊ'lɪŋgwəl], bilingual [bar'lɪŋgwəl] and multilingual [ˌmʌltɪ'lɪŋgwəl]. They give information about words in one (mono-), two (bi-) or more than two (multi-) languages.

B. Listen to the tape, [16], and read the text again after it.

- Look at the two dictionary entries and answer the questions.
  - a) library ['laɪbrəri] n (pl libraries) a room or building for books. librarian [laɪ'breəriən] n someone who works in a library. (Oxford Basic English Dictionary. Oxford University Press, 1995.) b) handy ['hændi] adj (handier, handiest) 1 (clever with hands) умелый, мастеровой, рукастый ( $coll^2$ ); he is ~ у него золотые руки. 2 (easy to handle) удобный для пользования. 3 (convenient) удобный, сподручный (coll); it may come in ~ это может пригодиться. (Cxford Russian Dictionary. Cxford University Cxford Cxfor

### Questions

- 1) Which of the two words comes from a monolingual (bilingual) dictionary?
- 2) Where can you find information about how to pronounce the words?
- 3) How do you know that one of the words is a noun and the other is an adjective?
- 4) Which of the words has one and which more than one meaning?
- 5) Which of the dictionaries gives word combinations?
- 6) Which of the dictionaries gives derivatives<sup>3</sup>?
- 7) What does ~ stand for?

Listen to the tape, (17), and repeat the names of some countries, languages and nations.

I.

Country	Language (official)	People	Nations
America (the USA)	English	an American/ Americans	(the) Americans
Australia	English	an Australian/ Australians	(the) Australians
Canada	English/ French	a Canadian/Canadians	(the) Canadians
Germany	German	a German/Ger- mans	(the) Germans
Italy	Italian	an Italian/Ital- ians	(the) Italians
Mexico	Spanish	a Mexican/Mexicans	(the) Mexicans
Norway	Norwegian	a Norwegian/ Norwegians	(the) Norwegians
Russia	Russian	a Russian/Russians	(the) Russians
China	Chinese	a Chinese/Chine- se (people)	the Chinese
Portugal	Portuguese	a Portuguese/ Portuguese (peo- ple)	the Portuguese
Japan	Japanese	a Japanese/Japa- nese (people)	the Japanese
Vietnam	Vietnamese	a Vietnamese/Vietnamese (people)	the Vietnamese

a dictionary entry ['entri] — словарная статья

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> coll. = colloquial [kə'ləʊkwiəl] — разговорный

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> a derivative [dı'rıvətıv] — производное слово

Country	Lan-	Pe			
LINE TO SEE	guage	Sing.	Pl.	Nations	
Holland	Dutch	a Dutchman/ a Dutchwoman	Dutchmen/ Dutchwomen	the Dutch	
Britain	English	a Briton = a British person	Britons = Brit- ish people	the British	
England	English	an English- man/an En- glishwoman	Englishmen/ Englishwomen, English people	the English	
Ireland	Irish	an Irishman/ an Irishwoman	Irishmen/Irish- women, Irish people	the Irish	
France	French	a Frenchman/ a Frenchwoman	Frenchmen/ Frenchwomen	the French	

### Focus

# Обрати внимание на то, что

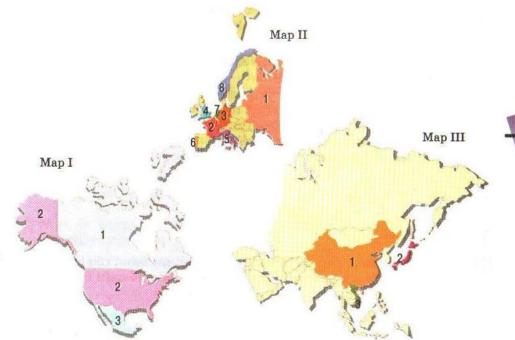
• название нации в целом обычно употребляется с определенным артиклем — the English (англичане); the French (французы), the Chinese (китайцы), the Russians (русские). Однако в случае слов на -an — (the) Americans, (the) Canadians — он может опускаться;

• в некоторых случаях наименование отдельных представителей нации образуется при помощи сложных слов или словосочетаний — an Englishman/an Englishwoman, English people;

• во фразах типа «Я русский», «Он англичанин» чаще используется прилагательное, чем существительное. Ср.: I am Russian. He is English. They are American. (I am a Russian. He is an Englishman. They are Americans. — возможные, но значительно реже употребляемые варианты.)

Look at the maps and say what countries you can see there, people of what nationalities live there and what languages they speak.

Example: Number 1 on Map II is Russia. (The) Russians live in Russia. They speak Russian.



# Do It on Your Own

- Complete the sentences. Use nationality words.
  - 1) Did you eat ... cheese when you were in Holland?
  - 2) ... tea comes from China. It is world-famous.
  - 3) Sumo is a ... sport in which two very large men fight.
  - 4) In some ... restaurants you can eat borsh, blini and drink tea from a samovar.
  - 5) The ... live on the British Isles.
  - 6) Do people in Mexico speak ... like people in Spain?
  - 7) Mike and Jack are Canadians. Do they speak ... or ...?
  - 8) The ... celebrate the New Year holiday in the hottest time of the year.
  - 9) When Paul was in Paris, he met some very nice .... Now they are good friends.
  - 10) The Grimm brothers are .... They wrote their tales in the ... language.

# This is John Barker. Write questions and ask if he has already

- 1) been to Washington, D.C.
- 2) seen the Capitol
- 3) taken some pictures of the White House
- 4) sent home some postcards
- 5) had a trip to New York
- 6) found many places of interest in the US
- 7) brought some souvenirs from America
- 8) met interesting people in the USA
- 9) bought some American books



# tep Two

# lo It Together

Listen to the poem, (18), read it aloud and say what can help you to see the wind. In which lines of the poem Christina Rossetti uses present perfect?

The Wind

(Christina Rossetti)

Who has seen the wind? Neither I, nor you;

But when the leaves hang trembling,

The wind is passing through.

ния, ниты дрожа

проходит сквозь них

Who has seen the wind? Neither you nor I:

But when the trees bow down their heads,

The wind is passing by.

кланяются, склоняют головы проходит мимо

# Which is right: a) or b)? Say in which four cases both are right1.

- 1) a) The Chinese have come this evening.
  - b) Chinese have come this evening.
- 2) a) Is he Norwegian?
  - b) Is he a Norwegian?

- 3) a) The French are famous for their beautiful clothes.
  - b) French are famous for their beautiful clothes.
- 4) a) Russians are brave people.
  - b) The Russians are brave people.
- 5) a) Irish live on an island.
  - b) The Irish live on an island.
- 6) a) Those people who live in Holland speak the Dutch.
  - b) Those people who live in Holland speak Dutch.
- 7) a) The Japanese is a difficult language.
  - b) Japanese is a difficult language.
- 8) a) The Italians like having fun.
  - b) Italians like having fun.
- Work in pairs. Ask if your friend has done these things this week (month, year, today).

Example: to do the room

- Have you done your room this week?
- Yes, I have./No, I haven't.
- 1) to learn a poem by heart, 2) to take pictures, 3) to buy a dictionary, 4) to swim in the swimming bath, 5) to find some money, 6) to be to the shops, 7) to see a good film, 8) to bring some flowers to your mum, 9) to give a call to your grandparent(s), 10) to visit the school library, 11) to spend a lot of money, 12) to catch a cold
- Colin Baxter is having a birthday party this evening. He wants to know if everything is ready. Say what questions he asks Alice, his helper.

Example: to send e-mails to my friends

- Have you sent e-mails to my friends yet?
- 1) to get answers from my friends
- 2) to clean the floors
- 3) to do the dining room
- 4) to make an/the apple pie
- 5) to bake a/the cake
- 6) to buy fruit and sweets
- 7) to send for the flowers
- 8) to ring up my mother
- 9) to bring more chairs from the library
- 10) to think of some nice music

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Say in which four cases both are right. — Скажи, в каких четырех случаях правильны оба варианта.

Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [ (19), and repeat.

A

belong [bi'lon] — принадлежать

slowly ['sləʊli] — медленно also ['ɔ:lsəʊ] — тоже

 land [lænd] — 1) земля;
 у

 2) страна
 т

way [wei] — 1) путь, дорога; 2) метод, способ

**speech** [spi:tʃ] — речь **sound** [saund] — 1) *n* звук; 2) *v* звучать

develop [dr'veləp] — развивать(ся)

) *n* звук; **grow** [grəʊ] — расти **by and by** — постепенно

B

belong: to belong to someone, to belong to some place. These exercise-books don't belong to me. This land belongs to a big family. Which swimming-club do you belong to?

land: 1) (countable) a beautiful land, foreign lands. I'd like to see a lot of lands and to meet a lot of people. 2) (uncountable) dry land, stony land. Columbus's sailors didn't see land for a long time.

speech: a good speech, a long speech, to make a speech. James made a very interesting speech in Parliament yesterday. His speech is very difficult to understand.

**sound** (*n*): the sounds of music, strange sounds, beautiful sounds. Strange sounds were coming from the kitchen.

sound (v): to sound good, to sound English, to sound like the truth. That sounds like a train. Your new song sounds beautiful. This sentence sounds like good English.

forget (forgot, forgotten): to forget a word, to forget a/the address, to forget slowly (easily). I've forgotten her telephone number. She's forgotten where she has left her car. I'll never forget my first teacher.

forget-me-not: Forget-me-nots are blue and pink, they are spring flowers.

**slowly:** to walk slowly, to speak slowly. He slowly opened his eyes. We drove slowly down the country road.

**also:** He speaks English and he also speaks German. I like bananas and I also like oranges.

way: a short way, a long way, an easy way, a funny way, the best way. 1) Which is the way to the city centre? Will you be able to

find your way to my house? 2) What is the best way to learn a language? He has a strange way of talking.

develop: to develop into sb/sth, to develop from sth. A boy develops into a man. That little village has developed into a great city. I'd like to develop this idea. French developed from Latin.

grow (grew, grown [graun]): to grow well, to grow slowly. Grass grows after rain. Oranges grow on trees, you know. The farmer has grown a lot of apples this year.

grow up: When I grow up, I will be a librarian.

by and by: They will change by and by.

### 6 Answer the questions.

- 1) Does English belong to the same language group as German? French? Russian?
- 2) Do you think languages develop?
- 3) Do you think you are able to make a speech in English? in Russian?
- 4) To what foreign lands have you been? Would you like to go?
- 5) Why do teachers call some children "slow learners"?
- 6) What is the right way to read the word c-a-u-g-h-t?
- 7) How many sounds are there in the word c-a-u-g-h-t? And how many letters?
- 8) What's the best way to learn English?
- 9) Is your love of the English language growing by and by or not?
- 10) Are you also thinking of learning another foreign language?
- 11) Do you think people can forget their own language living in a foreign land?
- 12) Do you easily forget names?

# A. Read the text and choose the right item<sup>1</sup> in the sentences after it.

# Why Don't We All Speak the Same Language?

There is a theory ['Oləri] which says that at one time, at the beginning of history all the people of Europe spoke one and the same language. They call it a parent language. Maybe there were two or more parent languages in Europe. At first they belonged to small groups of people. By and by these groups became bigger and went to live in new lands. In their new countries they first spoke their

 $<sup>^1</sup>$  an item — пункт;  $s\partial$ .: вариант

old language but with time their speech began to sound different. In the new places those people stopped using some of the old words and so they forgot them. The structure ['straktsə] of their sentences slowly changed too. They also made new words to speak about new things they found in the new lands. After a long time the changes in words, pronunciation [prə,nansi'essən] and grammar were so great that their language began to sound like a different one. That was how a new language was born. In just these ways, Spanish, French and Portuguese developed from Latin ['lætin] and English, Norwegian, Dutch and some other languages grew from Old German.

1) A parent language is the language ... modern languages developed.

a) from which

b) into which

2) At first the parent language belonged to ... people.

a) a lot of

b) rather few

3) With time bigger groups of people ... the new lands.

a) left

b) left for

4) In the new lands their language began to ....

a) change

b) become worse

5) In the new lands people forgot ... of the old words.

a) all

b) some

6) A new language is born ....

a) slowly

b) overnight1

7) English and Spanish belong to ....

a) one and the same group of languages

b) different groups of languages

8) Norwegian and Dutch developed from ....

a) Old English

b) Old German

B. Listen to the tape, (20), and read the text again after it.



# **Focus**

Уже известное тебе слово **too** и новое слово **also** переводятся одинаково, с помощью русского «тоже». Обрати внимание на то, что *too* обычно стоит в конце предложения. She speaks French too.

Слово *also* чаще используется в середине, обычно перед основным глаголом (кроме глагола to be).

She also speaks French.

She can also speak French.

Ho: She is also French.

Also иногда используется в начале предложения.

He has written two letters. Also he has written three postcards.

Для разговорной речи более типично употребление слова too.

### Paraphrase these sentences.

E x a m p l e: I've been to the USA. I've been to Canada too.
I've been to the USA and also to Canada. (I've been to the USA and I've also been to Canada.)

- 1) I like growing roses. I like growing forget-me-nots too.
- 2) Great Britain is a beautiful island. Ireland is a beautiful island too.
- 3) Watching television tonight sounds good to me. Watching videos sounds good too.
- 4) Spanish developed from Latin. Italian developed from Latin too.
- 5) English grew from Old German. Norwegian grew from Old German too.
- 6) French sounds beautiful. Italian sounds beautiful too.
- 7) Going abroad is a good way of learning English. Listening to tapes and reading books is a good way of learning English too.
- 8) Lilies-of-the-valley belong to spring flowers. Forget-me-nots belong to spring flowers too.



### **Focus**

Запомни три формы следующих глаголов

Hor	11	111
break	broke	broken
choose	chose	chosen
drive	drove	driven
ride	rode	ridden
go	went	gone [gnn]

¹ overnight [,əʊvə'naɪt] — зд.: очень быстро

### Complete these sentences. Use present perfect.

1) Sorry, I (break) your favourite pen. 2) Which of the mobiles you (choose)? 3) Little Dick never (ride) a horse. 4) Is Frank at home? — Yes, he just (drive) back. 5) Where Nick (go)? — He (go) to the bank. 6) Jane says she never (break) her leg. 7) You (choose) a birthday present for Mary yet? 8) You ever (ride) a bike? 9) I already (drive) my father's car. 10) Where is Ann? Where she (go)? — She (go) to the cinema. There is a very good film on at the "Rossiya" cinema.



#### **Focus**

Обрати внимание на разный смысл предложений.

- 1. He has gone to the bank. (Он ушел в банк. Он сейчас в банке.)
- 2. He has been to the bank today. (Он был (побывал) в банке, но его уже там нет.)

### Ocomplete the sentences. Use gone or been.

1) Mark has ... to the swimming bath.



2) Sid has ... to the library.



3) Diana and Polly have ... to the shops.





5) The girls have ... to the cinema.



6) Greg and Tony have ... to the museum.



# Do It on Your Own

Write the same in English.

Принадлежать семье, постепенно, развиваться, медленно, произнести речь, латинский язык, меняться медленно, лучший способ, длинный путь, приятные звуки, расти на юге, сухая земля, прекрасная страна, превратиться в мужчину.

Mr Norman Andrews has had a very busy day today. Write what he has done.

Example: to be to the bank

Norman has been to the bank.

- 1) to make a speech at the meeting
- 2) to have lunch with his boss

З-Афанасьева, 8 кл.

- 3) to send some business letters
- 4) to drive to the airport
- 5) to choose a birthday present
- 6) to ride a bike in the park
- 7) to go to bed early

# Step Three

# Do It Together

Listen to the tape, (21), and say what their nationalities are.

Example: Paul Davis is British.



Paul Davis



Anna

Swen



Nina



Julia



Chris



Samuel

Max

Martha



Frida

### Say how good you are as a pupil. Choose a, b or c.

- 1) You come to school
  - a) well before the bell.
  - b) just before the bell.
  - c) after the bell.
- 2) You remember to bring
  - a) all your school books.
  - b) some of your school books. c) very few of your school books.
- 3) You ... forget to do your homework.
- a) never
- b) sometimes
- c) always
- 4) Your answers
  - a) always sound correct.
  - b) sometimes sound correct.
  - c) do not often sound correct.
- 5) Your tests are
  - a) usually good.
  - b) sometimes good.
  - c) practically never good.
- 6) You have developed ... in your school subjects.
  - a) a great interest
  - b) some interest
  - c) no interest
- 7) This interest is
  - a) growing.
  - b) growing very slowly.
  - c) not growing at all1.
- 8) You ... being a pupil.
  - a) love
  - b) rather like
  - c) hate

Sum up your points: a = 3, b = 2, c = 1. If you have 20-24points, you are a fantastic pupil. If you have 16-20 points, you are a good pupil; if you have less than 16 points, you should try again.

<sup>1</sup> at all - COBCEM



### Focus

Ты уже знаешь, что новые слова в английском языке можно образовать при помощи суффиксов и префиксов (приставок). Познакомься с новыми. Суффикс -less указывает на отсутствие чего-либо, какого-либо качества и служит для образования прилагательных.

```
child + less = childless (бездетный)
end + less = endless (бесконечный)
speech + less = speechless (немой)
use + less = useless (бесполезный)
cloud + less = cloudless (безоблачный)
```

Суффикс -ly служит для образования наречий и реже прилагательных.

```
deep + ly = deeply (глубоко)ugly — некрасивыйslow + ly = slowly (медленно)lovely — прелестныйterrible + ly = terribly (ужасно)
```

Обрати внимание, что если прилагательное оканчивается на  ${\bf y}$ , то в наречии эта буква меняется на  ${\bf i}$ :

```
easy — easily happy — happily heavy — heavily lazy — lazily dry — dryly/drily
```

Form adverbs from the adjectives and use some of them in the sentences.

cold, dry, nice, warm, bad, happy, sad, brave, busy, free, heavy, honest, lazy, light, neat, selfish, special, stylish, sure, terrible, traditional, real

1) Mr Robinson always speaks to me .... 2) Pat walked ... in the park looking at the trees. 3) Jenny dress ... and always wears fashionable shoes. 4) Many teachers ... begin teaching English with present progressive. 5) Bob fought ... but didn't win. 6) Mrs Davidson stood up ... from her chair and went to the kitchen to cook. 7) Patrick told me ... that he didn't like my results. 8) Old Mrs Brown lives ... with her children. 9) ... she didn't mean it. She just said it without thinking. 10) Old Mrs Clark can't forget her friends and always smiles ... when she remembers them.

### Paraphrase these sentences as in the examples.

#### A.

Example: Mr Brown has no children. Mr Brown is childless.

- 1) There are no clouds in the sky.
- 2) Jack has no hair.
- 3) There is no use in this job.
- 4) The valley did not have an end.
- 5) Mrs Loveday didn't have any hope.
- 6) The last leaf has fallen down from the tree.
- 7) There were no stars in the sky that night.

#### B

Example: It is not important. It is unimportant.

- 1) The boy's manners are not pleasant.
- 2) Jack is not able to do it.
- 3) That was not a usual job.
- 4) Mr Flint is not a successful businessman.
- 5) Jane's clothes are stylish.
- 6) Helen is not a selfish girl.
- 7) Bob is not sure of our success.
- 8) Theirs was not an official visit.



### Focus

Описать то, что человек сделал, можно, используя разные времена. Если известно КОГДА, а часто и ГДЕ произошло действие в прошлом, и оно непосредственно не связано с настоящим, употребляется past simple. We went to the USA last year. (Известно, когда и где мы были.)

Если говорящему не важно, когда действие произошло, а важен его результат, который связан с настоящим моментом, используется *present perfect*.

I have read the book. (Книга прочитана, я знаю, о чем она.)

past simple	present perfect
l wrote a letter yesterday. (известно когда)	I have written a letter. (важен результат — письмо на- писано)
Bob broke my cup two days ago. (известно когда)	Bob has broken my cup. (важен результат — чашка раз- бита)

Обрати внимание на то, что в диалогах часто первый вопрос (реплика) задается в *present perfect*, а последующий разговор, выяснение деталей происходит в *past simple*.

- Have you written the letter, Mary?
- Yes, I have.
- When did you write it?
- I wrote it yesterday.

### Past simple or present perfect?

- 1) I (see) Mr Jackson a minute ago. He (be) in the school yard.
- 2) I am so sorry. I just (break) your favourite vase.
- 3) Father, look, we (buy) a new boat!
- 4) Alice (buy) a new dress last Saturday.
- 5) Fred (ride) his horse in the park yesterday.
- 6) Jane already (finish) doing her room. It is very clean.
- 7) I (choose) this dress. Do you like it?
- 8) Where is John? Where he (go)?
- 9) You ever (eat) sushi? What is it like?
- 10) I'm not hungry. I (have) already lunch.
- 11) Last week I (teach) my son swimming.
- 12) Last summer Victor (get) up very late.
- 13) Mum, have a look! I (find) a beautiful stone. It is brown, yellow and orange.
- 14) Jack (fight) with his best friend last Tuesday.
- 15) Bob says he never (be) here.

# Complete the dialogues and act them out.

- Example: Have you bought the dictionary?
  - Yes, I have.
  - When did you buy it?
  - I bought it three days ago.
- 1) Have you seen this film?
- Yes, ....
- When ...?
- # 1000 ...
- 2) Has your brother rung up, granny?
  - Yes, ....
- When ...?
  - $-\dots$

- 3) Have they been to Paris?
  - Yes, ....
  - When ...?
  - ··· ·
- 4) Have the children found their pet?
  - Yes, ....
  - When ...?
  - -····
- 5) Have you begun your French classes?
  - Yes, ....
  - When ...?
- ... .
- 6) Has she had lunch yet?
  - Yes, ....
  - When ...?
  - ... .
- 7) Have Mary and John finished their homework?
  - Yes, ....
  - When ...?
  - -····
- 8) Has Bobby played the piano?
  - Yes, ....
  - When ...?
  - ... .
- Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [ (22), and repeat

A.

kind [kaind] — вид, сорт, тип, разновидность kind of — вроде бы (разг.) рориlar ['popjolə] — популярный culture ['kʌltʃə] — культура true [tru:] — правдивый, правильный, настоящий, истинный truly ['tru:li] — правдиво, действительно probable ['probəbəl] — возможный

probably ['probabli] — возможно
vocabulary [və'kæbjoləri] —
словарь, словарный запас
science ['saɪəns] — наука
scientist ['saɪəntɪst] — ученый
scientific [ˌsaɪən'tɪfɪk] — научный
technology [tek'nɒləʤi] — техника, технология
voice [vɔɪs] — голос
air [eə] — воздух

kind: different kinds of food, a good kind of job. What kind of dog is that? It is a rottweiler ['rotvaile]. He is the kind of boy who is always fighting. There are no notes of any kind on the table.

kind of: He is kind of unhappy. He looked kind of angry.

**popular**: a popular song, a popular sportsman; to be popular with sb. This hotel is popular with the tourists.

culture: modern culture, Russian culture, the cultures of Eastern countries. They are people of different cultures.

**true**: a true story, a true answer, a true friend. Is it true that Jennifer is a child prodigy? His book gives a true picture of life in South Africa.

truly: I truly believe all her words. Roy loved Jane truly.

probable: a probable result. This is probable but I don't think it will happen.

probably: I'll probably telephone you this evening.

vocabulary: Shakespeare's vocabulary, a poor vocabulary. John has a vocabulary of about ten thousand words.

science: Biology, Chemistry and Physics are sciences. Susan is a science teacher. He works in the field of science.

scientist: D.I. Mendeleev was a great scientist.

scientific: a scientific fact, scientific instruments.

technology: a college of science and technology, information technology. Science and technology develop in each country.

voice: a deep voice, a pleasant voice. Fred spoke in a quiet voice. fresh: fresh flowers, fresh water, fresh vegetables. You are looking fresh this morning. The swimming bath has fresh water in it, not sea water.

air: high in the air, in the open air. Mrs Reynolds went out into the street to get some fresh air.

in other words: English is very important for your future job, in other words you should begin learning it really well.

### Complete the sentences using the new words.

1) A. S. Pushkin had more than 20,000 words in his v... 2) My doctor says I must spend a lot of time in the open a... 3) You're my friend, my only and t... friend. 4) Frank is very busy this week. I am not sure but p... he will find some free time and visit

us. 5) What k... of pupil is Helen? 6) M. V. Lomonosov was a great Russian s.... 7) V. V. Vernadsky's s... works are well-known abroad. 8) The new teacher is very p... with children. 9) Our nurse always speaks in a very quiet v.... 10) On the 6<sup>th</sup> of June people bring f... flowers to the monument of A. S. Pushkin in Pushkinskaya Square. 11) Valya is very much interested in s... and t.... 12) If you are looking for c..., then Paris is the place for you.

A. Read the text and say where people use English internationally.

# Different Kinds of English

(part I)

In the 16<sup>th</sup> century the people who lived in Europe did not know English. They couldn't understand English words. Only those who lived on the island called Great Britain, spoke English. English was useless for the people of the continent. In those years Latin, French, German and Italian were popular and widely known.

Four hundred years later the speakers of English travelled into every corner of the globe carrying their language and culture with them. Today English is more important than any other language has ever been. It has become the language of the planet, the first truly global language. Of all the world's languages it is probably the richest in vocabulary. Now it is the language of technology and science, business and sport. English is the official language of the Olympics, the official voice of the air and of the sea. People use English as the first language in English-speaking countries such as Britain, the USA, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. It has become the second language in countries like India, Nigeria [nai'dʒiəriə] and Singapore [stŋə'pɔ:]. Then there is English as a foreign language in Europe and Asia, in Africa and South America, in other words, all over the world.

But English is not the same everywhere. Several kinds of English have appeared. They are American English, Canadian English, Australian English, etc. People who live in Britain speak British English.

B. Listen to the tape, (23), and read the text again after it.

## 10 Read out of the text "Different Kinds of English" sentences that mean the same as the sentences below.

1) At that time Europeans did not speak English.

2) Only the British spoke this language.

3) People who lived in other European countries could not use this language.

4) English-speaking people brought their language to every part of the world.

5) English may have the largest number of words of all the languages.

6) People use English in air and sea navigation.

7) English is different in all the countries where they speak it.

8) A few types of English have developed.

## Do It on Your Own

111 Paraphrase the sentences. Use adverbs.

E x a m p l e: Mrs Ross leads a happy life. She lives happily.

1) John is a slow reader.

2) They sing this song in a different way.

3) Jim is free to speak as he likes. (Jim can speak...)

4) Barbara always wears stylish dresses. (She dresses...)

5) Jack always gives me a warm smile when we meet. (He always greets me...)

6) Mary has a strong dislike for cats.

7) Tom knows a clever way of doing this job.

8) Put on your warm clothes, the weather is very cold today.

9) When Jane was speaking, her words sounded sad.

10) The news gave me a great surprise.

## 12 Express the same in English.

Настоящий друг, правдивый ответ, разные культуры, какой-то сердитый, свежие фрукты, большой запас слов, теплый воздух, возможный ответ, наука и техника, популярный среди туристов, высокий голос, великий ученый, любые виды (разновидности), научные факты.

# Step Four

## Do It Together

- Listen to the tape, (24), and say why they are not doing it.
  - 1) Colin, 2) Jenny, 3) Ruth, 4) Chris, 5) Polly, 6) Sue
- Roy and his friends like learning foreign languages. They know the language of the country where they are from and the language of the country where they are living now. Say what languages they can speak.

Example: Tom comes from Italy. He is in Spain now. Tom speaks Italian and he can also speak Spanish.

- 1) Patrick comes from Germany. Now he is in China.
- 2) Barbara comes from Norway. Now she is in Japan.

3) Oleg comes from Russia. Now he is in Canada.

- 4) Victor comes from France. Now he is in Holland.
- 5) Kate comes from Mexico. Now she is in Portugal.
- 6) Zara comes from Australia. Now she is in Vietnam.
- 7) Sue comes from Ireland. Now she is in New Zealand.
- 8) Peter comes from Belorussia. Now he is in the USA.

## Complete the dialogues. Choose the answers from part B.

- 1) Do you want some lunch?
- 2) What are you going to have?
- 3) Can you draw pictures with vour computer?
- 4) Your brother's car looks very new.
- 5) Is it cold this morning?
- 6) Where are the sandwiches?
- 7) What about our present for Sue?
- 8) Do you know when Doris is flying to America?

a) No wonder1. He has just bought it.

B.

- b) Yes, it is. I've just been out.
- c) No, thanks. I've just had some.
- d) No, I haven't spoken to her vet.
- · e) I don't know. I have never done it.
  - f) I haven't decided yet.
  - g) I've eaten them all. I'm sor-
  - h) Sorry, I haven't bought it.

<sup>1</sup> no wonder ['wʌndə] — неудивительно



## Focus

У следующих глаголов вторая и третья формы совпадают.

L	II	III
burn	burnt	burnt
dream	dreamed	dreamed
	dreamt [dremt]	dreamt
hear	heard	heard
learn	learned	learned
	learnt	learnt
let	let	let
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
put	put	put
say	said	said
tell	told	told
spell	spelt	spelt
stand	stood	stood
strike	struck	struck
understand	understood	understood
win	won	won
9171	1.5	

## Work in pairs. Ask questions and answer them. Begin your questions with "Have you ever ...?"

Example: Have you ever written a poem? — Yes, I have.

- 1) burn your hand
- 2) win chess games
- 3) make a cake
- 4) send e-mails
- 5) spend your holidays abroad
- 6) buy a pet
- 7) teach any school subject
- 8) grow vegetables
- 9) speak German
- 10) write a poem

- 1) tell lies
- 2) learn French
- 3) hear "The Beatles"
- 4) spell your name in English

R.

- 5) dream of going to China or Japan
- 6) fall off a bike
- 7) read poems by John Keats
- 8) buy brown rice or brown sugar
- 9) build a house
- 10) eat mangos

## Make up dialogues and act them out.

Example: to drive (my new car)/last Sunday A: I have already driven my new car.

B: When did you drive it? A: I drove my car last Sunday.

1) to cook (lunch)/an hour ago

- 2) to begin reading (a Harry Potter book)/last week
- 3) to leave (for Moscow)/two weeks ago
- 4) to choose (a present)/a minute ago
- 5) to break (my mother's cup)/yesterday
- 6) to ride (my new bike)/last weekend
- 7) to speak (to our new teacher)/last Friday
- 8) to send (a birthday card to mum)/three days ago
- 9) to learn (the poem by heart)/yesterday
- 10) to do (exercise ten)/last evening
- 11) to make (a dress)/a few days ago



Обрати внимание на то, что с указателями this morning, this afternoon могут употребляться и present perfect, и past simple. Выбор того или иного времени зависит не от того, когда конкретно происходило действие, а от того, когда о нем говорят. Сравни:

1) I have seen him this morning. (Разговор происходит до 12:00, утро еще не закончилось.)

I saw him this morning. (Разговор происходит после 12:00, утро уже закончилось.)

2) I've spoken to Alan this afternoon. (Разговор происходит до 18:00.) I spoke to Alan this afternoon. (Разговор происходит вечером после 18:00.)

## What is Sarah saying?

Example: to send an e-mail this morning (16:00) I sent an e-mail this morning.

to meet John this afternoon (15:30) I've met John this afternoon.

1) to play volleyball this morning (13:00)

- 2) to watch an interesting film this morning (11:00)
- 3) to call my friend this morning (15:00)
- 4) to see Anna this afternoon (21:00)
- 5) to speak to Dr Ross this afternoon (14:00)





## **Focus**

## Vocabulary

(p/vocabularies)

1) all the words in a language (словарный состав)

English has one of the largest vocabularies.

2) a list of words in a lesson or a book (список слов)

How many words are there in your textbook vocabulary?

3) all the words that a person¹ knows (запас слов)

A young child has a small vocabulary.

## Dictionary

(p/ dictionaries)

a book that gives words from A to Z with their meanings I have bought two English-Russian dictionaries.

## 7 Fill in the missing words.

- 1) Doctors use a special ... when they talk about medicine.
- 2) Where did you buy this ... for children? 3) The baby's ... is very small, he knows only ten words. 4) There is a ... at the end of the book. You can find all the difficult words there. 5) What famous ... of the English language do you know? 6) This book is a German-English .... 7) Pupils write the new English words in their .... 8) When you open a ... you can learn a lot about words.
- 8 A. Read the text and say why it can be difficult for American and British people to understand each other.

## **Different Kinds of English**

(part II)

As you already know people speak different kinds of English. For example, we can hear different forms of English in different parts of the English-speaking world. Those people who live in India speak Indian English, in Canada — Canadian English, in Australia — Australian English. British English and American English are the most important kinds of the English language be-

cause people use them very widely. And they are not really that much different. If you meet people who come from the USA, you can say that their language sounds different from British English. You will be able to say that these people are not British. But you won't probably have much difficulty in understanding what they say.

It is so because the vocabulary and grammar of the language is very much the same. But some things have different names in

Britain and America. Compare these.

Russian word	American word	British word	
осень	fall		
лифт	elevator ['eliveitə]	lift	
грузовик	truck	lorry	
кинофильм	movie ['mu:vi]	film	
кинотеатр	movies	cinema	
конфета	candy ['kændi]	sweet	
печенье	cookies ['kʊkɪz]	biscuits ['biskits]	
бензин	gas(oline) ['gæsəli:n]	petrol ['petrol]	
жареный картофель (тонкими ломтиками)	chips	(French) fries [fraiz]	
кран (водопроводный)	faucet ['fɔ:sɪt]	tap	
плита	cooker	stove	
свитер	sweater	jumper	
мусор	garbage ['ga:bidʒ]	rubbish *	
мусорный ящик/бак	garbage can	dustbin ['dastbin]	
тротуар	sidewalk ['saɪdwɔ:k]	pavement ['peɪvmənt]	
автостоянка	parking lot	car park	
аптека	drugstore ['dragsto:]	chemist's ['kemists	
брюки	pants	trousers	

B. Listen to the tape, [125], and read the text again after it.

<sup>1</sup> a person ['p3:sən] — человек, личность

The Robinsons live in Britain and the Wilsons live in the US. Their lives are very much the same. They do the same things every day. Read the text about the Robinsons and describe the Wilsons' day. Use American English.

The Robinsons are a British family. They live in Manchester. This is their usual weekday. They get up at 6:30. Tom Robinson goes to the bathroom. He turns on the tap, has a shower, cleans his teeth and puts on his favourite clothes — a dark blue jumper and old grey trousers. Tom is a lorry driver so he doesn't wear any good clothes to work.

While Tom is dressing, his wife Mary gets his breakfast ready. She cooks eggs on the *stove*. Tom likes a big breakfast before he goes to work. Mary doesn't eat much for breakfast — just a cup of coffee and some *biscuits* after which she puts her favourite *sweet* in her mouth and washes up.

After breakfast Tom kisses his wife and leaves home at seven. He has a busy day in front of him. He drives his *lorry* to the *petrol* station and starts off. He has lunch at 12:30. He usually has fish and *French fries* in a small café and drinks two mugs of the strongest tea. Tom works until five and returns home at six.

In the morning Mary cleans the flat, takes the *rubbish* out and puts it in the *dustbin* standing on the street *pavement*. Then she goes to the *chemist's* where she works. She also comes back home at six.

Tom and Mary like to go out in the evening. They get their old Ford out of the *car park* and drive to the *cinéma*. They are fond of watching new *films* and never miss them.

## Do It on Your Own

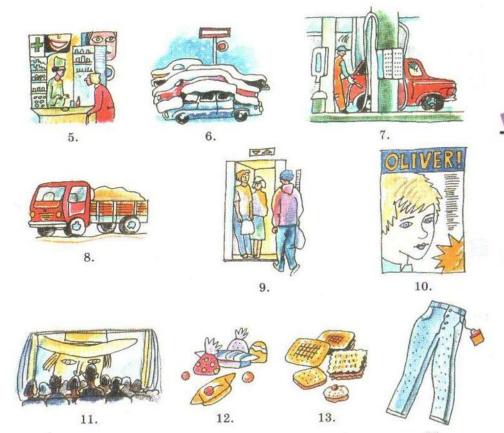
Write the names of these things in American English and British English.











## Develop these situations.

E x a m p l e: Peter has learned 15 English words.

Peter has learned 15 English words. He learned them because he wanted to be ready for his English class.

- 1) Jane has burnt the apple pie.
- 2) Samantha has put on her new dress.
- 3) Little Willy has spelt his name correctly.
- 4) Tina has made no mistakes in the test.
- 5) The teacher has let me miss his class.
- 6) We have already heard the news.
- 7) Boris has not told us the truth.
- 8) James has won the game.

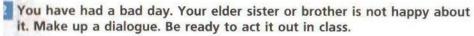
# itep Five

## o It Together

Listen to the text, (26), about Daniel Radcliffe and complete the sentences

## **Daniel Radcliffe**

- 1) Daniel was born ....
- 2) Daniel's pets are ....
- 3) Daniel loves playing ....
- 4) In future he would like to become ....
- 5) His favourite subject at school is ....



Example: not to clean the floors/to forget

- Why haven't you cleaned the floors?
- Sorry, I forgot, etc.
- 1) not to eat the porridge/not to be hungry
- 2) not to finish your homework/my friend, ring up
- 3) not to clean your room/to be busy
- 4) not to ring the doctor up/to forget his telephone number
- 5) not to do the shopping/to leave the money at home
- 6) not to watch the new film/to miss it
- 7) not to learn the poem/to find it too difficult
- 8) not to win the race/not to be ready for it
- 9) not to make your chocolate cake/to have no butter at home



## Focus

## Present perfect часто употребляется

1) с такими обстоятельствами, как

**before** [bi'fɔ:] — прежде; **lately** ['fertli] — недавно, в последнее время; **several** ['sevərəl] **times** — несколько раз; **many times** — много раз; **the first time** — в первый раз:

- I have never eaten a mango before.
- I haven't seen him lately.

Jack has been to Norway several times. We have heard this melody many times. It's the first time I'd come to this disco.

2) в предложениях с именами прилагательными в превосходной степени типа:

It's the best film I have ever seen.

She is the most beautiful lady Jack has ever seen.

## 3 A. Complete the sentences. Use present perfect.

I have (never)	seen eaten played bought met read visited		lately. before. several times. many times.
----------------	---	--	---

1 1 1

# B. It's Martin's first visit to America. Say what he has done for the first time.

Example: He has never been to New York before. It's the first time he has been to New York.

- 1) He has never done [dʌn] the Metropolitan Museum before.
- 2) He has never played baseball before.
- 3) He has never swum in the ocean before.
- 4) He has never seen skyscrapers before.
- 5) He has never eaten American food before.
- 6) He has never driven in a limo1 before.
- 7) He has never enjoyed a Broadway musical before.
- 8) He has never stayed in the Carlton Hotel before.
- 9) He has never listened to concerts in Carnegie Hall.
- 10) He has never travelled about the country so much.

<sup>1</sup> a limo ['lɪməʊ] = a limousine

Complete these sentences using present perfect of the verbs and the adjectives in the superlative.

Example: The temperature is +35 °C today. It's the hottest temperature we ever (have).

It's the hottest temperature we have ever had.

1) I really love this film. It is (interesting/see).

2) I don't think you should read this book. It is (boring/read).

3) Your marks are terrible. They are (bad/have).

4) Jane, you look wonderful today. You are wearing a very nice hat. It is (good/see).

5) This year winter is so cold. It is (cold/have).

6) The basketball player is so big. He is (tall/see).

7) The children are really enjoying their holidays. They are (good/ have).

8) The result of the game is terrible. It is (bad/see).

Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, (27), and repeat

## Fuelt soil - A.

fast [fa:st] - 1) adj быстрый; 2) adv быстро prefer [рп'fз:] — предпочитать follow ['fbləv] — 1) следовать (за); 2) понимать following ['fbləvin] — следуюший regular ['regjulə] — регулярregularly ['regjulali] - peryлярно

rich [ritf] — богатый such [SAt] — такой perfect ['pз:fikt] — совершенный need [ni:d] — нуждаться wait [weit] — ждать pronunciation [pra,nansi'erfan] произношение maybe — может быть, возонжом

## B.

fast: 1) a fast train, a fast car. My watch is fast. 2) to talk fast, to walk fast, to drive fast, to think fast. I can't run very fast. prefer (preferred): to prefer tea to coffee, to prefer (to do) doing something. John preferred riding a bike to walking. follow: 1) to follow some rule, to follow a person. Tuesday follows Monday. I was sure that someone was following me. 2) to follow a speech, to follow a film. Do you follow what I am saving? following: On the following day. Read the following carefully.

regular(ly): regular meetings, to meet regularly. He regularly visits his granny.

rich: a rich woman, a rich country. Alan Parson is a rich English-

the rich = rich people

such: such an interesting book, such a boring film, such rich people, such fast cars. It is such sweet tea that I can't drink it.

perfect: a perfect day, a perfect lady, perfect results. This room is absolutely perfect for our meeting. Practice makes perfect means: if you do something regularly, you will learn to do it perfectly.

need: to need water, to need food, to need to go to school. You'll need some warm clothes for the winter. You can stay longer if you need to.

wait: to wait for the teacher, to wait for the bus. Let's sit down and wait until Bobby comes here.

pronunciation: the right pronunciation. Her pronunciation is getting better.

maybe: Maybe I'll come too. There were maybe fifteen people there. Maybe it will snow tonight.

in fact: I thought Betty was in her room but in fact she was in the garden.

to grow up: She is really starting to grow up now. She is not a child anymore.

at the beginning: At the beginning of the story we didn't understand anything. At the beginning I didn't think about becoming a journalist.

to come with practice: You'll learn to do it easily, it comes with practice.

## 6 A. Name three things that can be

- 1) popular
- 5) rich 6) probable
- 2) fresh 3) true
- 7) scientific
- 4) regular
- 8) perfect

## B. Paraphrase using the new words.

1) to like tea more than coffee, 2) to walk behind somebody, 3) to train sounds, 4) probably, 5) a car that is not slow, 6) a man who is not poor, 7) to come every day

## C. Find the opposites.

early - ... slow — ... seldom - ... good - ... popular — ... forget - ... to tell a lie - ... poor - ... modern - ... to stay — ...



## **Focus**

После слова such может идти:

а) имя существительное в единственном числе с неопределенным артиклем

Alex is such a good pupil. It is such an interesting book!

- ымя существительное во множественном числе без артикля I like such pupils.
- с) имя существительное неисчисляемое без артикля It is such terrible weather we're having today. Such juice is very tasty.

## Write what these people say.

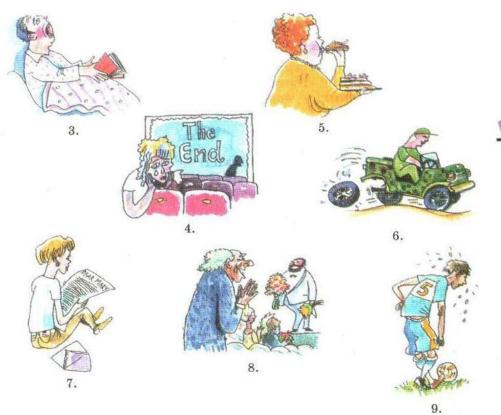
Example: wash/dirty clothes I have never washed such dirty clothes.







can learn it fast. Sergey: I find it rather difficult. Especially grammar. My teacher says I make a lot of grammar mistakes. In fact I prefer reading.



1) hear/terrible music, 2) meet/a beautiful girl, 3) read/a boring book, 4) see/a sad film, 5) eat/ a tasty cake, 6) drive/a bad car, 7) write/a long letter, 8) watch/interesting shows, 9) play difficult games

13 A. Read the dialogue and say how Masha, Boris and Sergey are going to use English in the future.

## Interview

Interviewer: I know that you are all learning English. Do you find it difficult?

Masha: No, not really. I think language learning is fun. And I

Boris: I liked learning English at the beginning, but now it is getting more difficult and less fun. There are so many things to remember — words, grammar, spelling, pronunciation. English has such a rich vocabulary... And I don't always understand my teacher.

Interviewer: I see. And what do you do to learn English successfully? Have you got any special rules that you follow?



Masha: I try to do my homework regularly. It helps me to practise English when there are no classes. I know that "practice means perfect". I also watch films in English and listen to tapes.

Boris: I listen to English songs. Eminem is my favourite singer. English songs help me to understand English better. I have learned some of them and sing them with my friends.

Sergey: I do a lot of exercises, watch American video films in English and read adapted books. That's what I like most of all.

Interviewer: And may I ask you how you are planning to use English in the future?

Sergey: I'd like to learn to speak English well because I want to visit many countries of the world and meet different people. I hope I'll be able to speak English to them.

Boris: I'd like to be a computer programmer and I'll need English for my future job. A lot of modern computer programmes are in English.

Masha: I don't know how I am going to use my English yet. I just like learning it. Maybe I'll learn another language — French, Spanish or Italian. Maybe I'll become a linguist. I can't wait to grow up and go to university.

B. Listen to the tape, (28), read the dialogue in groups of four after it and then act the dialogue out.

## Mow would you answer the interviewer's questions?

- 1) Do you find language learning difficult?
- 2) What do you do to learn English successfully?
  - 3) How are you planning to use English in the future?
  - 4) Why are you learning English?



## Social English

## 10 A. Learn to show your surprise in English.

Oh! Dear me! (Боже мой!)
Really? (Неужели?)
Is that so? (Так ли это? Неужели?)
You don't say so! (Не может быть!)
Fancy that! (Подумайте только!)
Well, I never... (Вот так так!)
I am surprised. (Я удивлен.)
I am shocked. (Я потрясен.)
It's incredible! (Невероятно!)

## B. Read out the sentences and give your reaction to them.

- 1) Nowadays about 400 million people speak English.
- 2) Nowadays English is second only to Chinese in the number of people who speak it.
- 3) About 300 million people living in more than 60 countries speak English as a second language.
- 4) There are about 5,000 languages and dialects in the world today. About 845 come from India.
- 5) People use 65 different alphabets today.
- 6) There are no languages without the [a] sound.
- 7) There were only 30,000 words in Old English. Some people say there are about 600,000 words in Modern English.
- 8) Modern English has the largest vocabulary in the world.

## 11 Act out dialogues, exchange the news and show your surprise.

Example: — I hear that we are going on a school trip next weekend.

- Is that so? Where are we going?
- To St. Petersburg.
- Fancy that!

# Do It on Your Own

- Complete these sentences. Use prepositions where necessary.
  - 1) Ruth asked me to wait ... her.
  - 2) ... the beginning of the lesson we practised ... writing.
  - 3) "I know the way," Mr Hillar said. "Follow ... me."

5) Who does the book belong ...?

6) Rose says she prefers travelling ... air ... travelling ... train.

7) His answer was really good, ... fact it was perfect.

8) Peter Pan was a boy who didn't want to grow ....

## 13 Article or no article?

1) Such ... people also live near us. 2) Those were such ... short stories. 3) Bob has seen such ... interesting film. 4) Only rich people can buy such ... things. 5) Fanny is such ... beautiful woman.

6) Where do they buy such ... tasty ice-cream? 7) We're such ... good friends! 8) I've never done such ... difficult work in my life.

9) I hate such ... rainy weather. 10) There was such ... deep snow in the forest that the travellers couldn't walk.



# **Living Things Around Us**

# Step One

## Do It Together

- Listen to the tape, [ (29), and complete the sentences.
  - 1) Darwin was born on ....
  - 2) His father was ....
  - 3) Darwin became a medical student at ....
  - 4) He got interested in geology and ....
  - 5) The expedition on the "Beagle" went to the coasts of ....
  - 6) Darwin died in ....
  - 7) He was buried 1 in ....
- Look at the pictures, listen to the tape, (30), and learn the names of these birds.



1) a (sea) gull



2) a pigeon ['pɪʤɪn]

<sup>1</sup> he was buried ['bend] — он был похоронен



3) a swallow ['swplou]



4) a nightingale ['nattingerl]



5) an ostrich ['pstritf]



6) an owl [aul]



8) a woodpecker ['wud,peka]



9) a magpie ['mægpar]



7) a parrot ['pærət]

10) a crow [krau]



11) a swan [swpn]



12) a blackbird ['blækb3:d]



- a) which of these birds you have seen and when you saw them
- b) which of the birds you have never seen
- c) about which birds you have never heard
- d) what you know about these birds
  - · where they live
  - · what colour they are
  - · if they are big/small, strong/weak, etc
  - · which of them can sing/talk
- e) what other birds you know
- f) which of these birds you may have as a pet
- g) which of these birds you have (had) as a pet and what it was like



Известные тебе слова other и others могут употребляться в таких ситуациях, когда речь идет об определенных людях или предметах. В этих случаях необходимо использование определенного артикля. Сравни:

There are two armchairs in the room. An old lady is sitting in one of them, the other (armchair) is free. (Другой из двух упомянутых.)

Wendy has got two dresses, one is red, the other (dress) is blue. (Другое из имеющихся двух.)

Vera has been to Canada but she has never been to the other English-speaking countries. (Другие; ограниченное число англоговорящих стран, за исключением Канады.)

There were five children in front of the house. One of them was a girl, the other four (the others) were boys. (Все другие члены этой группы, кроме одной девочки.)

Обрати внимание, что сочетание the other + существительное во мн. ч. часто заменяется в речи сочетанием the others.

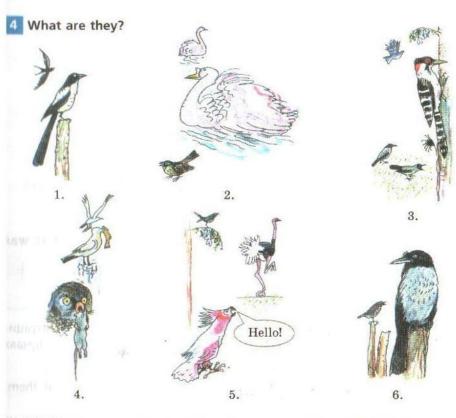
the other boys = the others

This apple is mine and the other is yours.

(На тарелке два яблока.)

This apple is mine and the others are yours.

(На тарелке несколько яблок.)



- 1) This is a magpie. What is the name of the other bird?
- 2) The sparrow is grey. What is the colour of the other birds?
- 3) The woodpecker is in the tree. Where are the other birds?
- 4) The seagulls are eating fish. What food is the other bird eating?
- 5) The nightingale is singing. What are the other birds doing?
- 6) The lark is a small bird. The other bird is big. What is it?
- Complete the sentences. Use the words from the box.

another, other, the other, others, the others

- 1) Yesterday morning I met two girls. One was Matilda but I didn't know ... girl.
- 2) Where are the children? John went to play football, ... went with him.

- 3) There are three cakes on the plate. I'd like to have one and you may take  $\dots$
- 4) There are two cakes on the plate. I'd like to have one and you may take ....
- 5) This pencil belongs to Betty, ... pencil is mine.
- 6) I am still1 hungry. May I have ... sandwich, please?
- 7) Some people like it when it is hot, ... like it when it is not.
- 8) Jane's house is on ... side of the street.
- 9) Some books are better than ....
- 10) We must all know this. I'll call Ann. Will you tell ...?
- 11) Come ... day.
- 12) I wanted to spend our holidays in California but Roland had ... ideas.
- 13) Not now. We'll talk about it some ... time.
- 14) One of the children was Rob, what was ... boy's name?
- 15) One boy fell off his chair and all ... laughed.



## Focus

Для того чтобы подчеркнуть, что то или иное действие началось в прошлом, происходило какое-то время в прошлом и продолжается в настоящем, в английском языке используют настоящее перфектное продолженное время (present perfect progressive).

## Have/has been + Ving

I have been living in Moscow for 10 years. — Я живу в Москве 10 лет.

(Действие началось 10 лет тому назад, все эти 10 лет я жила в Москве и сейчас тоже живу в этом городе.)

Mary has been playing the piano for 40 minutes. — Мэри играет на пианино 40 минут.

We have been learning English for four years. — Мы учим английский 4 года.

Помимо указателя **for** в подобных предложениях часто употребляется **since** — c (какого-то времени), а также **all** (day, night, etc).

Sue has been talking on the phone since 2 o'clock. — Сью разговаривает по телефону с 2 часов.

It has been raining since morning. — Дождь идет с утра.

They have been working in the garden all the morning. — Они работают в саду все утро.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> still — все еще

## 6 Say what language and how long the children have been learning.



1) Tom — Russian for 3 years



2) Jenny - French for 5 years



3) Peter — Latin for a year



4) Robin - German for 2 years



5) Diana — Italian for 4 years



6) Sam - Chinese since 2003



7) Brian — Japanese since 2000



8) Matilda — Greek since 1998



9) Nora — Irish since 2004



10) William - Spanish since 1999

It is autumn and it often rains in many cities of Europe. Say how long it has been raining. It is 8 p.m. now.

Example: It began raining at 3 p.m. in Rome. It has been raining for 5 hours.

- 1) It began raining at 9 a.m. in Bonn.
- 2) It began raining at 2 p.m. in Berlin.
- 3) It began raining at 11 a.m. in Paris.
- 4) It began raining at 7 p.m. in Madrid.
- 5) It began raining at noon (12 o'clock) in Moscow.
- 6) It began raining at 10 a.m. in St. Petersburg.
- 7) It began raining at 4 p.m. in Oslo.
- 8) It began raining at 6 p.m. in Vienna.
- 9) It began raining at 8 a.m. in London.

## 8 Complete the sentences.

Example: I am tired. I (do) the room for three hours already. I have been doing the room for three hours already.

- 1) Jenny (draw) since morning.
- 2) Sam (work) there for fifteen years.
- 3) Chris (sleep) for ten hours already.
- 4) Rose and Alan (learn) Spanish for 2 years.
- 5) It (snow) since morning.
- 6) The children (play) tennis for forty minutes.
- 7) The Willers (live) in Leeds all these years.
- 8) Granny (cook) all the morning.
- 9) Ruth (read) for two hours.
- 10) Miss King (teach) since 1987.
- 9 A. Read the text and say what new information you found in it. Choose the right item in the sentences following the text.

## Language of Birds

The song of birds is one of the most wonderful sounds. Probably the best singers are the lark and the nightingale. Sometimes when we are out in the country, we hear birds making some sounds and

we may think they are telling one another something. The fact is that birds have their own language, just as many other animals do but their language is different from people's language. We use words and people must know these words, they should learn them. Birds don't learn their language. They are able to sing, "to talk" because they can make sounds and noises. It is an instinct with them. Let's take a chick from its parents so that it can't hear the sounds they make. When the chick grows up, it is able to make the same sounds as its parents. But birds can't LEARN how to sing and how to speak, they can't learn "other languages". Some birds like parrots, crows, jackdaws1 are talented imitators. They imitate the speech of people and other animals. A lot of birds can learn other birds' songs. For example, if a canary [kə'neəri] grows up with a nightingale, it can learn to sing like a nightingale. But this imitation is not a real language. Birds do not talk as we do.

- 1) a) Birds have their own language.
  - b) Birds don't have their own language.
  - c) Maybe birds have their own language.
- 2) a) Birds have a language that is different from the languages people speak.
  - b) Birds' language is not different, it is the same. They speak as people do.
  - c) Birds' language is more difficult than the language of people.
- 3) a) A chick can't make the same sounds as its parents can.
  - b) A chick can make the same sounds as its parents can.
  - c) A chick can make the same sounds as its parents can if it lives with them.
- 4) a) Birds can learn other "languages" and understand them.
  - b) Birds can learn other "languages" without understanding them.
  - c) Birds can learn only other birds' languages.

- 5) a) Birds do not talk.
  - b) Birds talk as we do.
  - c) Birds talk but not as we do.
- B. Listen to the tape, [ (31), and read the text again after it.

## Do It on Your Own

## 10 Write what birds they are.

1) A small bird that can sing better than any other. It usually sings at night, but it can sing in daytime too.

2) It is easy to teach these birds that live in South Africa, Austra-

lia and South America some words that people use.

3) A bird larger than a sparrow but smaller than a crow. It is usually grey or dark-blue and grey, sometimes white or brown. Often lives in cities.

4) A large black and white bird that lives near the sea and has a loud voice.

5) A bird which is black-and-white and which often takes to its nest<sup>1</sup> small bright things.

6) A small brown singing bird that lives in the field, has its nest in the grass and usually sings early in the morning.

7) A bird with a long narrow beak which can make holes2 in trees.

8) A large beautiful white or sometimes black bird bigger than a duck, with a long neck that lives on rivers and lakes.

9) A night bird with large eyes that eats mice and other small animals.

## 11 What questions can you ask these people?

E x a m p l e: Mr Harry Parson has been writing a book for eleven months.

— Have you finished your book yet?

1) Simon has been looking for a job for five months.

2) Ann and Alan have been trying to do their homework for hours.

3) Alice has been hoping to buy a new mobile.

a jackdaw ['фækdɔ:] — галка

<sup>1</sup> a nest [nest] — гнездо

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> a hole [həʊl] — дыра

- 4) Ruby King has been thinking of visiting New Zealand for years.
- 5) Roland Scott has been trying to make a successful film for years.
- 6) Bobby has been hoping to find his favourite dog for weeks.
- 7) Nora has been thinking of going to a disco for weeks.
- 8) Alice has been waiting for her friend since morning.

## tep Two

# o It Together

- Listen to the tape, (32), and complete the sentences.
- 1) The nightingale lives in England from ....
- 2) The nightingale never visits ....
- 3) The nightingale sings at night and ....
- 4) The nightingale's song is beautiful but its body ....
- 5) The nightingale builds its home ....



## Match the sentences in the two columns.

### A

- 1) I've been reading the book for five minutes.
- 2) I haven't eaten for two days.
- 3) I haven't slept at all this night.
- 4) I've been sitting at home doing nothing all day.
- 5) I haven't had a drink since this morning.
- 6) I have been writing my book for two years.
- 7) I haven't seen John for a long time.
- 8) I have been waiting for Alice for an hour.

- B.
- a) My life is not interesting at all.
- b) I'm terribly tired.
- c) I'm very thirsty.
- d) And I already know it is very boring.
- e) I would like to know where he is.
- f) I think I'll finish it soon.
- g) I'm very hungry.
- h) When will she come?

Look at the sentences and say how we can form questions in present perfect progressive.

9

Has he been watching TV since morning? — Yes, he has.
Has she been writing postcards for two hours? — No, she hasn't.
Has the dog been sleeping for three hours? — Yes, it has.
Have you been sending e-mails since morning? — Yes, I have.
(Yes, we have.)

Have they been talking for an hour? — No, they haven't. How long have you been staying in this hotel? — Since Thursday. Since when has it been raining outside? — Since 4 p.m.

Work in pairs. Ask since when (how long) they have been doing it. Your partner will answer the question.



1) Mary and Kate/since afternoon



4) the Robinsons/since morning



2) The children/since last year



5) Julia/since she came home from school



3) Cousin Fred/since yesterday



6) The tourists/since ten in the morning



7) Jack/since 4 o'clock



9) The teachers/ since the end of school



8) The parents/since 5 p.m.

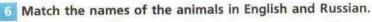


10) It/since yesterday evening

## How long have they been doing it?

Example: John /write/ 0.5 hour John has been writing for half an hour.

- 1) Victor /work/ 1.5 hours
- 2) Robert /watch TV/ 2.5 hours
- 3) Mr Cook/fish/3 hours
- 4) Jenny /lie in the sun/ 0.5 hour
- 5) The boys /run/ 0.5 hour
- 6) The Wenders /drive/ 1.5 hours
- 7) The children /play football/ an hour
- 8) Jim /read a book/ 0.5 hour
- 9) I / wait for you/ an hour



- 1) медведь, 2) корова, 3) паук, 4) крыса, 5) мотылек, 6) лиса, 7) улитка, 8) олень, 9) муравей, 10) журавль, 11) кенгуру, 12) лягушка
- a) a fox, b) an ant, c) a frog, d) a spider, e) a deer, f) a kangaroo, g) a rat, h) a moth, i) a bear, j) a snail, k) a cow, l) a crane

Look at the pictures. Listen to the tape, [33], and learn the names of these animals.



1) a lion ['laɪən]



3) a hedgehog ['hedshug]



5) a rabbit ['ræbɪt]



2) an elephant ['elifant]



4) a squirrel ['skwirəl]



6) a hare [heə]







8) a wolf [wulf]



9) a monkey ['maŋki]

- 8 Say which of these animals are wild and which of them are domestic. 1) a deer, 2) a kangaroo, 3) a sheep, 4) a pig, 5) an elephant, 6) a horse, 7) a rabbit, 8) a hare, 9) a tiger, 10) a dog, 11) a squirrel, 12) a wolf, 13) a monkey, 14) a lion
- A. Read the text "Helen Beatrix Potter" and match the paragraphs with their titles. There are four paragraphs but five titles. There is one extra title.



- a) Great Interests
- b) Beginning of a Writer
- d) Early Years
  - e) Story for a Sick Boy
- c) School Friends

## Helen Beatrix Potter

- 1) Helen Beatrix ['beatriks] Potter was born on 6th July 1866 in London. She was an only daughter of rather rich parents. She did not go to school but had classes at home.
- 2) Beatrix was fond of two things. They were animals and drawing. She had a lot of small pets at home: a family of snails, mice, a rabbit, bats1 and a hedgehog. From a small child she did hundreds of drawings of plants and animals and learned to do it very well. She often illustrated her letters to child friends with little animal drawings and told them stories about these animals.
- 3) One day in 1893 she wrote to a little boy called Noel Moor. The boy was ill and she wanted to please him and humour him2. The letter began with the words: "I don't know what to write to you so I shall tell you a story about four little rabbits whose names were Flopsy, Mopsy, Cottontail and Peter." In this letter she told the story of Peter Rabbit and illustrated it with lovely little drawings.
- 4) Eight years later Beatrix Potter remembered the letter and the story and wrote her now famous children's book "The Tale of Peter Rabbit". The book was very successful and Beatrix Potter became a professional children's writer. For many years now children in England and other countries have enjoyed her stories about mice, kittens3, ducks, squirrels, hedgehogs and rabbits. And her perfect illustrations make her books even better.
- B. Listen to the tape, (34), and read the text again after it.
- Read the text about Beatrix Potter again and say as much as you can about
  - · her family
  - · her interests
  - · her stories
  - · her first famous book

<sup>1</sup> domestic [də'mestik] — домашние

<sup>1</sup> a bat — летучая мышь

 $<sup>^2</sup>$  to please him and humour ['hju:mə] him —  $3\partial$ .: порадовать и развеселить его

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> a kitten — котенок

## Do It on Your Own

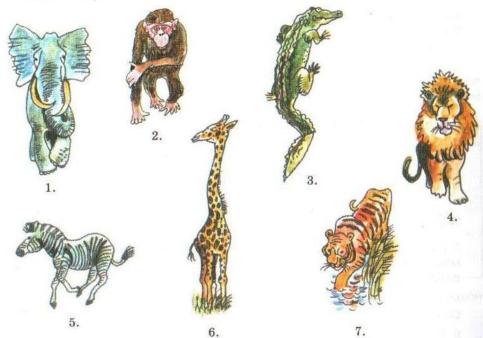
- 11 Complete these sentences and translate them into Russian.
  - 1) I (wait) for you for an hour and a half. Why have you come so late?
  - 2) Jenny (live) in this place since 1960. She knows everybody here.
  - 3) Peter (learn) Spanish for half a year only. His pronunciation isn't very good.
  - 4) Rose and her husband (build) their garage all the summer and they haven't finished it yet.
  - 5) My parents (travel) about the USA for two weeks already. They are coming back soon.
  - 6) The children (watch) television for an hour and a half already. I think I'll take them for a walk.
  - 7) Ruth (wash up) since after dinner. All the dishes are becoming clean.
- Work in pairs. Complete these questions and let your partner answer them.
  - 1) How long you (do) these exercises? (1.5 hours)
  - 2) Since when you (paint) the picture? (autumn)
  - 3) How long she (wait) for her lunch? (0.5 hour)
  - 4) Since when they (grow) these plants? (May)
  - 5) How long you (stay) at this hotel? (3 days)
- 13 Write the same in English.

Полчаса, полтора часа, пол-яблока, полтора банана, полтора месяца, две с половиной недели, первая (вторая) половина столетия, три с половиной минуты.

# Step Three

## Do It Together

Five people speak about animals that live in Africa. Look at the pictures, listen to the tape, (35), and say what animals they mean. There are two extra pictures.



Say how long these people have been doing it.



George — 1.5 hours



Greg - 0.5 hour



Molly and Kate - 2.5 hours



Jenny and Alice — 2.5 weeks



William and Sam — 0.5 year



Frank — since Sunday



Rose - since 2004



Mr Robinson — since yesterday



## **Focus**

1. В предложениях с использованием времени *present perfect progressive* момент, когда действие началось в прошлом, может быть обозначен придаточным предложением:

Jane has been watching TV since <u>mum came home</u>. Colin has been playing on the computer since <u>he returned</u>.

- В этом случае в придаточных предложениях всегда употребляется *past simple*.
- 2. Периоды времени, в течение которых длится действие, могут быть обозначены следующими словосочетаниями: all day, all night, all the afternoon или for a long time.

Helen has been talking on the phone all the afternoon. Bob has been working on the computer all day.

## Say how long they have been using these things.

E x a m p l e: Mr Stubbs /drive his car/he/to buy it/in 1999 Mr Stubbs has been driving his car since he bought it in 1999.

- 1) Julia/to wear her shoes/she/to buy them/last summer
- 2) Boris/to read this book/he/to borrow it/from the library

- 3) Chris/to take pictures/his father/to give him the camera
- 4) Brian and Mary/to live in this house/they/to come to town
- 5) The Davidsons/to play the piano/1999
- 6) Bill/to ride his bike/he/to get it as a birthday present
- 7) They/to use the garage/they/to build it
- 8) Jim/to drink from this cup/I/to give it to him two years ago



## ocus

# Reflexive pronouns, (36) (Возвратные местоимения)

У всех личных местоимений в английском языке есть соответствующие возвратные местоимения. Они имеют окончания -self в единственном числе и -selves во множественном числе.

Личные местоимения	Возвратные местоимения		
l you (ты) he she it	myself [mar'self] yourself [jə'self] himself [hɪm'self] herself [hə'self] itself [ɪt'self]	⟩ сам(а) себя	
we you (вы) they	ourselves [aʊə'selvz] yourselves [jə'selvz] themselves [ðəm'selvz]	сами себя	

- 1) The boy found himself in a big room. Мальчик очутился в большой комнате.
- 2) Have you made the cake yourself? Вы сами приготовили торт?
- 3) He never speaks of himself. Он никогда не говорит о себе.

Возвратные местоимения, как правило, не употребляются при следующих глаголах: to wash, to dress, to bathe [beið] (купаться), to shave (бриться), to hide (прятаться).

Сравни также:

Она плохо себя чувствует. — She feels ill.

## What does it mean in Russian?

- 1) Look at yourself! Your face is dirty. 2) Pam dressed and went downstairs to the kitchen. 3) They never speak of themselves.
- 4) Mary always does the shopping herself. 5) Bob is very small. He can't open the door himself. 6) I don't know anything about it my-

11

self. 7)You yourselves heard it, didn't you? 8)We'll go there ourselves and see what is going on. 9) I enjoyed the music but didn't like the play¹ itself. 10) Think yourself, I won't tell you.

## 5 Complete the sentences. Use reflexive pronouns where necessary.

- 1) I can't tell you what to do, you must decide for ....
- 2) Nobody helped him. He did everything ....
- 3) The child was ill yesterday. How is she feeling ... today?
- 4) He got up early, washed ... and shaved ... and at 7 o'clock he was ready to leave the house.
- 5) I think that they understand everything ....
- 6) Jenny looked at ... and saw that her skirt and blouse were not very clean.
- 7) Don't go to the shops, I'll buy everything ....
- 8) The day was hot and the girls decided to bathe ... in the river.
- 9) Look at this new chair. We've made it ... . Isn't it beautiful?
- 10) They don't buy bread in the shop. They make it ....

## 6 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [ (37), and repeat

A.

include [in'klu:d] — включать including [in'klu:din] — включая species ['spi:fi:z] — образец, образцы discover [dis'knvə] — обнаружить, открыть discovery [dis'knvəri] — открытие air [eə] — воздух soil [sɔil] — почва, земля root [ru:t] — корень

insect ['insekt] — насекомое move [mu:v] — двигаться common ['kpmən] — 1) общий; 2) часто встречающийся, обычный earth [3:θ] (also Earth) — 1) земля, земной шар; 2) Земля (планета) desert ['dezət] — пустыня breathe [bri:ð] — дышать support [sə'pɔ:t] — 1) поддерживать; 2) содержать

B.

include: to include something/somebody, to include on the list. The class of twenty includes seven girls. Did you include me when you made the list?

including: I have seen all his films including the last.

species (pl. species): a tropical species. There are more than 120 species of birds in the National Park.

discover: to discover sth. To discover means to find out something for the first time. Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492. Fleming discovered penicillin [penisslin].

discovery: to make a discovery. Mr Johnson made his discovery when he was very young.

air: cold air, fresh air, in the air, by air = by plane. I'd like to open the window, I need some air. The boy jumped into the air.

soil: to grow in (the) soil. Plants grow well in good soil.

root: A root is the part of a plant or a tree that is in the soil.

insect: An insect is a small animal with six legs. Ants and bees are insects.

move: to move fast (slowly), to move in = to move into a flat (a house), to move something. It is cold in the room, move your chair nearer the fireplace. We're going to move in next week.

common: 1) a common language, to have something in common. The English and Americans have a common language. I have a lot in common with my brother. 2) Double-deckers are common in London. Rabbits and foxes are common in Britain.

earth: The earth is a planet where we live. The moon goes round the earth. The austronauts returned successfully from the moon to the earth.

desert: the Gobi Desert, the Sahara Desert. There are a lot of deserts in Africa.

breathe: to breathe in, to breathe out. Fish cannot breathe out of water. Breathe in deeply.

support: to support a family, to support children, to support a plan. Her father supported her till she was twenty-five.

## Complete the sentences with your new words (see Ex. 6).

1) I know that my friends will always s... me. 2) This place looks like a d..., there are no plants growing here. 3) Bees and ants, as people think, are i... that live in big groups. 4) Doctors say it is very good to b... a sea .... 5) Rabbits and hares look nearly the same but in fact they are two different s.... 6) The 15<sup>th</sup> century was the time of great geographical d...s. 7) My favourite subjects i... biology and chemistry. 8) Cactuses ['kæktəsis] can grow in dry s..., practically without any water. 9) At home I d... all my family

<sup>1</sup> a play [pleɪ] — пьеса

waiting for me. 10) It's not always easy for me to find a c... language with Paul, I think he is rather stupid. 11) The Browns are planning to m... from Glasgow to Edinburgh. 12) How many oceans are there on E...? 13) Plants get their food and water from the s... with the help of r...s. 14) Planes are a lot heavier than a... but they can fly.



## Focus

Обрати внимание на то, что для обозначения понятия *земля* в английском языке используется несколько слов:

Earth — Земля (планета)

land — земля (суша)

soil — земля (почва)

The planet Earth is so beautiful!

After two weeks on the sea we saw land at last.

She put some soil in the pot and planted a rose.

## 8 Which word to use — Earth, land or soil?

1) Mrs Willer prepared the ... for the flowers. 2) Is the ... nearer to the Moon than Mars is? 3) The children planted the tulips in the ... 4) "Water, water and water everywhere. When shall we see ...?" 5) Mr Parson is interested in the geography of the .... 6) The captain wanted to walk on dry ... 7) She planted the for-

get-me-nots in wet sandy .... 8) After working at sea for eight years, I got a job on ....

years, 1 got a job on ....

A. Read the text and say in what way animals are different from plants.

## **Animals and Plants**

As scientists say, an animal is any living thing (including people) that is not a plant. No one knows how many different species of wild plants and animals there are on our planet. People discover hundreds of new kinds every year. In what way are animals different from plants? This question is not always easy to answer. Animals and plants get their food differently: animals eat plants or other animals, while plants get their food from the air and soil with the help of their leaves and roots. But we know that some plants catch and "eat" insects. Also animals can move about while plants grow in the same place but there are some plants that can

travel and some animals that never leave their place. As you see plants and animals have very much in common.

There are more than 300,000 different species of plants on earth. Some plants grow very tall and live a very long life. Other plants are so tiny that you can see them only through a microscope ['markrəskəvp]. The same is true about animals. You can find plants and animals in the oceans and deserts, in mountains and in cold tundra ['tʌndrə] plains. When people first learned to cultivate ['kʌltɪveɪt] plants and domesticate [də'mestikeɪt] animals, our civilization [ˌsɪvəlar'zeɪʃən] began. We can't live without them. Plants are able to use sunlight to build themselves up. They use carbon dioxide¹ gas and "breathe out" life-giving oxygen². They support life on the planet.

B. Listen to the tape, [38], and read the text again after it.

## 10 Answer the questions on the text "Animals and Plants".

1) What do living things include?

2) Can we say that we have studied all the plants and animals that live on our planet?

3) In what way are plants and animals different?

4) Why is it not always true?

5) The text says that some plants are tiny and some are very big. Is that true about animals? Can you give examples?

6) Why can't we live without plants and animals? In what ways do we use them?

## Do It on Your Own

11 Complete the sentences. Use for or since.

1) The boys are tired. They have been playing football ... an hour and a half. 2) Alex has been talking on the phone ... I came home. 3) The telephone has been ringing ... about a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it? 4) Mr Williams has been writing his book ... half a year and hasn't finished it yet. 5) People have been working on this ... the beginning of the century. 6) John has been washing his car ... nine o'clock this morning. 7) Sarah has been waiting for her sister ... a long time.

<sup>2</sup> oxygen ['pksidən] — кислород

<sup>1</sup> carbon dioxide ["ka:bən daı'nksaid] — углекислый

12 Write the same differently.

E x a m p l e: No one helps Danny to grow vegetables.

Danny grows vegetables himself.

1) No one helps me to do my homework. 2) No one helps Anna to learn Spanish. 3) No one helps the children to decorate their classroom. 4) No one helps Mr and Mrs Page to plant the trees. 5) No one helps Jason to move the desks in the office. 6) No one helps us to make porridge. 7) No one helps them to make photos for their album. 8) No one helps the bee to make honey.

# Step Four

# Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the tape, [ (39), and choose the right item.
  - 1) a) Sally is fifteen this year.
    - b) Sally is going to be fifteen this year.
  - 2) a) Sally is thinking about her career.
    - b) Sally is not thinking about her career.
  - 3) a) Sally goes to the park to watch birds all by herself.
    - b) Sally goes to the park to watch birds with her friends.
  - 4) a) Sally knows a lot of species of birds living all over the world.
  - b) Sally knows a lot of species of birds living in Britain.
  - 5) a) Sally loves reading books about plants and animals.
    - b) Sally loves reading books about birds and animals.
  - 6) a) Sally's teacher gives her books about animals to read.
    - b) Sally's teachers give her books about animals to read.
  - 7) a) Bears and wolves do not live in Great Britain any more.
    - b) There are a lot of bears and wolves in Britain now.
  - 8) a) Sally gave a talk on British birds.
    - b) Sally gave a talk on British animals.
  - 9) a) Sally is going to university to do biology.
    - b) Sally is thinking about going to university to do biology.
- Think of the beginnings to these sentences. Use present perfect progressive.

Example: ... since I bought it.

I have been watching this video since I bought it.

- 1) ... since I came back.
- 2) ... since I began learning English.
- 3) ... since we moved in.
- 4) ... since I made it.
- 5) ... since my mother showed me how to do it.
- 6) ... since my friends gave it to me.
- 7) ... since my parents bought it for me.
- 8) ... since my cousin left.



## Focus The Control of the Control of

1. Для того чтобы описать действие, которое началось в прошлом и длится до сих пор, глаголами, которые не употребляются в продолженных временах (to know, to have, to be, to want, to love), употребляется present perfect.

I have been here for 3 days already. — Я здесь уже три дня.

How long have you been here? — Сколько времени ты находишься здесь? I have had this camera for years. — Этот фотоаппарат у меня уже давно (много лет).

She has known Boris all her life. — Она знает Бориса всю жизнь.

I have always wanted to visit London. — Мне всегда хотелось побывать в Лондоне.

I have always loved you. — Я всегда тебя любил(а).

- 2. В некоторых случаях время *present perfect progressive* употребляется, чтобы описать действия, которые начались в прошлом и только что закончились, при этом видны явные результаты или признаки этой деятельности.
- a) Why are you so dirty?
  - We have been playing football.
- b) Why is the kitchen so messy, Rose?
  - I've been cooking.
- B How long have they been doing these jobs?



1) Mrs Wenders



2) James



3) Jim







5) Patrick



6) Diana

1) since 2001, 2) for ten years, 3) since he finished school, 4) for three years, 5) since 1998, 6) for a year and a half

## 4 How long have they had these?

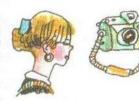


1) The Croppers





2) Miss Simpson



3) Megan



4) Harry







5) Alan



6) Alice

1) for three years, 2) for years, 3) since last summer, 4) since his parents bought it, 5) since last month, 6) for two weeks

## A. How long have they known them?

Example: Dr Cross — Mr Harrison — since 2000 Dr Cross has known Mr Harrison since 2000.

- 1) Rose Smith John Parker for 6 months
- 2) Simon Alan Willer all his life
- 3) Mrs Parson Roland Scott since she visited Britain
- 4) Roger Gordon Tony Dobson for two years
- 5) Miss Hook Fanny Devlin for years
- 6) Walter Sam for 3 days

## B. Say what they have always wanted to do.

- 1) Roy to become a journalist
- 2) Sarah to learn Spanish
- 3) Ann to visit Canada
- 4) Tom to write a poem
- 5) David and Chris to go to the Great Lakes
- 6) The Lovedays to move in a new house

## Match the sentences in the two columns.

- 1) Why are your hands red and green?
- 2) Why are you so tired?
- 3) Why are your shoes wet?
- 4) Why are your eyes red?
- 5) Why is the kitchen so messy?
- 6) Why are you breathing so fast?
- 7) Why is your face so red?
- 8) Why are you so cold?

- a) I have been working all day.
- b) I have been running all the way.
- c) I have been out in the street for 3 hours.
- d) I have been cooking dinner.
- e) I have been watering the flowers.
- f) I have been sunbathing.
- g) I have been crying.
- h) I have been painting a pic-
- A. Read the text and match the paragraphs with their titles. There's one extra title.
  - a) Common Birds
- d) Common Insects
- b) Common Animals
- e) National Symbols
- c) Common Plants

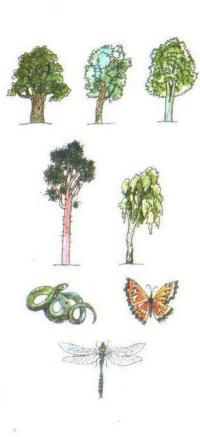
## Flora and Fauna<sup>1</sup> of the British Isles

1) The warm and wet climate ['kaimit] of Great Britain is very good for plants. That's why the country looks like a big beautiful garden.

Centuries ago there were a lot of forests on the British Isles but now you can find big forests only in a few parts of the country—the north of Scotland and the south-east and south-west of England. The most common trees in Ergland are oaks, elms and beeches while Scotland has a lot of pites, firs and birches.

2) The fauna or animal life on the Bntish Isles is like in the northwest of Europe. Many larger animals such as bears and wolves don't live on the British Isles any more but there are a lot of smaller anmals: foxes, rabbits, hares and helgehogs. Deer live in the forests of Scotland and England too. There are also different kinds of fish, snakes, lizards, frogs, butterflies and dragonflies.

3) More than two hundred species of birds live on the British Isles and about two hundred kinds are visitors of the place. Many of them are songbirds, in spring the laid rings with their singing. The most common are blackbirds and spirrows. A lot of waterbirds — swans, ducks, geese and gulls — live on the lakes and rivers and on the sea coasts of Great Britain.



4) It may be interesting that the robin, one of Britain's common birds, has become the national bird of the country. There are also plant symbols ['simbəlz] of the country: the red rose is the national emblem ['embləm] of England, the thistle ['Oisəl] is the national emblem of Scotland, the yellow daffodil and the leek are emblems of Wales and the shamrock ['jæmrok] is the emblem of Ireland.



B. Listen to the tape, (40), and read the text again after it.

Listen to the tape, (41), and repeat these names of plants and animals.











an anteater

¹ fbra ['flɔːrə] and fauna ['fɔːnə] — флора и фауна







an edelweiss



a water lily

a palm

Speak about the fauna in these countri	9	Speak	about	the	fauna	in	these	countrie
--	---	-------	-------	-----	-------	----	-------	----------

Country	Common animals	Common birds	
The USA	black bears grizzly ['grizli] bears deer mountain sheep mountain goats in the mountains rabbits hares foxes opossums [ə'pɒsəmz] grey and red squirrels snakes crocodiles alligators ['æligeɪtəz]	woodpeckers owls swallows sparrows geese ducks magpies flamingos (in Florida)	
Canada	brown bears black bears grizzly bears polar ['pəʊlə] bears buffaloes ['bʌfələʊz] wolves coyotes ['kɔɪəʊts] deer mountain goats	Canada geese ducks owls sparrows magpies	

Country	Common animals	Common birds
Australia	kangaroos [,kæŋgə'ru:z] buffaloes rabbits crocodiles dingoes ['dɪŋgəʊz] koala bears anteaters	parrots other Austra- lian birds
Russia	?	?

## Where do these plants grow?

- 1) wild flowers
- a) in the north/south (of)...

2) firs

b) on dry soil

3) pines

c) on wet soil

- 4) maples1
- d) on sandy soil
- 5) oaks 6) birches

e) in the forest f) in the valley

7) beeches

- g) high in the mountains
- 8) evergreens
- h) in the water i) everywhere

- 9) palms<sup>2</sup>
- 10) water lilies
- 11) forget-me-nots
- 12) grasses
- 13) edelweisses

## III Listen to the song, (42), and sing along.

# I've Been Working on the Railroad

(American Song)

I've been working on the railroad
All the live-long day.
I've been working on the railroad
Just to pass the time away.
Can't you hear the whistle blowing?

железная дорога весь день напролет

провести время как свистит свисток

a maple ['meɪpəl] — клен a palm [pɑ:m] — пальма

# Rise up so early in the morn! Can't you hear the captain shouting, "Dinah, blow your horn!" Dinah, won't you blow, Dinah, won't you blow, Dinah, won't you blow your horn, your horn? Dinah, won't you blow, Dinah, won't you blow, Dinah, won't you blow, Dinah, won't you blow, Someone's in the kitchen with Dinah, Someone's in the kitchen I know!

Someone's in the kitchen with Dinah

Strumming on the old banjo And singing: Fee, fie, fiddlee-yie-o Fee, fie, fiddlee-yie o-o-o-o, Fee, fie, fiddle-yie-o Strumming on the old banjo! поднимайся рано утром как кричит капитан подуй в свой рожок

бренчит на старом банджо

## Do It on Your Own

12 Write symbols of what countries they are.









1.\_\_\_\_















8. \_\_\_\_\_

- Complete the situations. Use the verbs in brackets in the right verb forms.
  - 1) The boys (play) football now. They (be) tired. They (play) football for an hour and a half.
  - 2) Tom (begin) talking on phone an hour ago. I think he should finish. He (talk) on the phone for an hour already.
  - 3) Roy came to see the dentist at nine o'clock. It (be) 9:30 now. Roy (wait) for the doctor since 9:00 a.m.
  - 4) Colin (become) a professor in 1998. He (work) at the University since he (become) a professor.
  - 5) The Greens (move) to Canada last summer. They (live) in Canada now. They (live) in Canada for about a year.

# Step Five

- Listen to the tape, (43), and say which sentences are true and which are false.
  - 1) Ostriches have no wings.
  - 2) Ostriches can run as fast as horses.
  - 3) Ostriches live in Asia, Africa and South America.
  - 4) Ostriches hate water because they can get themselves wet.
  - 5) Ostriches eat only plants and nothing else.
  - 6) Ostriches live only in the wild.
  - 7) Not everything that people believe about ostriches is true.



## Work in pairs. Act out dialogues.

Example: — What have you been doing? - I've been eating apples.

















It is 9 p.m. now. Say how long it has been raining/ snowing in these cities.

Example: It has been snowing in New York since 8 p.m.

It has been snowing in New York for an hour.









2) since 11 a.m.



3) since morning







5) since 4 p.m.



6) since noon

- Act out dialogues then make your own dialogues with the words on the right and act them out too.
  - 1) I like this dress. Is it new?
  - Oh, no! I've had it for vears.
  - 2) I love these jeans. Are they new?
  - Oh, no! I've had them for years.
  - 3) Your blouse is so beautiful! Is it new?
  - Oh, no! I've been wearing it for years.

bag, hat, scarf, coat, belt, umbrella

trousers, socks, sandals, pyjamas, shoes, boots, shorts

coat, raincoat, jacket, gown, scarf



## Focus

Обрати внимание на различия времен present perfect и present perfect progressive.

## **Present Perfect**

- 1.
- 1) I have read the book.
- 2) He has written a letter.

(Действие произошло. Когда конкретно — не важно, налицо результат, связь с настоящим.)

11.

I have flown an airplane many times.

(Действие происходило один или несколько раз за определенный период времени и до момента речи.)

111

I have liked such movies ever since I was a child.

(Действие началось в прошлом и длится до сих пор. Действие выражено с помощью глаголов, не употребляющихся в продолженной форме).

## **Present Perfect Progressive**

- 1) I have been writing a book since July.
- 2) He has been writing a letter for half an hour.

(Действие началось в прошлом, продолжалось в прошлом и длится до сих пор.)

Your eyes are red. Have you been crying?

(Действие только что закончилось, признаки его налицо.)

IV.

С глаголами to live, to work в предложениях с since и for оба времени практически взаимозаменяемы.

I have lived here since 2003. He has worked at this hospital for ten years. I have been living here since 2003. He has been working at this hospital for ten years.

## 5 Present perfect or present perfect progressive?

1) It (snow) all day. When will it stop?

2) Hi, Tom. I (see, not) you for weeks. What (you, do) all this time?

- 3) I (write) to them three times, but I (get, not) any answer yet.
- 4) Bill (be) here since the 5<sup>th</sup> of November.
- 5) I (meet) Mrs Gordon many times this week.
- 6) Colin, you (miss) already very many classes.
- 7) I (phone) Diana for three hours already, but she is not at home yet.
- 8) It's 11 p.m. I (work) on the computer since six and I (finish, not) yet.
- 9) I always (want) to make a tour of Spain.
- 10) The telephone (ring) for almost a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?



## Focus

Возвратные местоимения часто употребляются после предлога **by** для того, чтобы подчеркнуть, что действие выполнено самостоятельно.

He did it all by himself. — Он сделал это абсолютно самостоятельно.

She lives by herself. — Она живет совершенно одна.

Susie and Kate made the dress all *by* themselves. — Сьюзи и Кэйт сшили платье абсолютно самостоятельно.

## 6 Answer the questions.

- 1) Do you usually make breakfast yourself or does mother or somebody else do it for you?
- 2) Do you usually do English exercises all by yourself or does anybody help you?
- 3) Have you ever driven a car yourself?
- 4) Do you live all by yourself or with your parents?
- 5) Did you learn to read yourself or did anybody teach you?
- 6) Do people speak to themselves? Do you speak to yourself? Why does it usually happen?
- A. Read these texts about flowers and say what months you associate them with and why.
  - 1) The snowdrop is as white as snow and grows when snow still lies in the forests. You can try to grow snowdrops in your garden too.

<sup>1</sup> to associate [ə'səʊʃieɪt] — ассоциировать

2) This month's flower is the primrose ['primrozz]. The primrose may have many different colours: white, yellow, red, pink, orange and purple. This little flower looking like a star is one of the earliest spring flowers. They are common in Europe, Asia and North America.

3) The flower of this month is the daffodil which grows and blooms early in spring. It has been a garden favourite for centuries. It has long leaves and bright yellow petals<sup>1</sup>. It belongs to the narcissus family. In Greek mythology, Narcissus was a young man who could love nobody else but himself. So gods<sup>2</sup> got angry with him and turned him into a flower.

4) Water lilies grow in ponds and lakes. These flowers are large. Some are deep yellow, some are pinkish white and some are blue or even purple. The best known water lily is Victoria Regia. The leaves of this plant grow over a meter and a half in diameter. Its big pink-white flowers open in the evening.

5) The chrysanthemum [kr]'sænθıməm] is one of the oldest flowers people grow. It has been grown in Japan for nearly two thousand years and is the national flower of that island country. Travellers brought it to Europe in the 17th century. This lovely flower can be white, yellow, red, purple or pink. Chrysanthemums are welcome flowers because they grow and open when there are not many other flowers around. 6) This sweet flower is probably everyone's favourite. Roses please us with their beauty from June to September and in England, whose emblem they are, you can sometimes see roses opening in November or even December. The most common colours are red, pink, white and vellow. If you want to say that a job or a situa-

tion includes some unpleasant things, you often

say "it is not all roses".

<sup>2</sup> gods — боги













poppy ['pɒpi] — мак; lilac ['laɪlək] — сирень; pansy ['pænzi] — анютины глазки; daisy ['deɪzi] — ромашка, маргаритка; dandelion ['dændɪlaɪən] — одуванчик; carnation [kɑːˈneɪʃən] — гвоздика; cornflower ['kɔːnflauə] — василек; bluebell ['blu:bel] — колокольчик; tiger lily ['lɪli] — тигровая лилия; sunflower ['sʌnflauə] — подсолнух



## Social English

## 8 Learn what people say on special days in English.

Congratulations! [kən'qræt[v'leт[ənz] — Поздравляю! Congratulations to you! — Поздравляю вас! My heartiest congratulations to you! — Сердечно поздравляю вас! Happy Birthday! Поздравляю с днем рождения! Many happy returns of the day! Best wishes for your birthday! — Наилучшие пожелания вам! Take my best wishes! — Примите мои наилучшие пожелания! I wish you luck! — Желаю удачи! Good luck! Всего наилучшего! All the best! May all your dreams come true! — Пусть сбудутся все ваши мечты! Enjoy yourself! Желаю хорошо повеселиться! Have fun!

Have a good time! — Желаю хорошо провести время!

Have a nice day! — Хорошего тебе дня!

Нарру New Year! — Счастливого Нового года! С Новым годом!

Merry Christmas! — С Рождеством!



## **Focus**

1. Обрати внимание, что в ответ почти на все поздравления и пожелания обычно говорят:

The same to you.

Thank you.

Thanks (a lot).

Thank you very much.

- 2. В ответ на поздравление с Новым годом обычно говорят "Happy New Year!".
- Happy New Year, Linda! Happy New Year, John!

¹ a petal ['petl] — лепесток

<sup>5-</sup>Афанасьева, 8 кл.

3. Поздравляя кого-либо с другим праздником, англичане чаще всего пользуются выражением Happy + something или Greetings on...

Happy Teacher's Day! — Поздравляю с Днем учителя! Happy Holiday! — Поздравляю с праздником! Happy Mother's Day! — Поздравляю с Днем матери! Greetings on Women's Day! — Поздравляю с днем 8 Марта! Greetings on the Russian Army Day! — Поздравляю с Днем защитника Отечества!

4. Выражения со словом congratulations, а также глагол to congratulate используют только тогда, когда поздравляют кого-то с успехами и личными достижениями, например: I know you've finished school. My congratulations!

## Complete these dialogues and then act them out.

- 1) I'm so glad you've become a student. I know it was not easy.
- 2) Happy New Year, dear!
  - ..., mom!
- 3) Good-bye, Fred. I wish you luck and happiness and success!
- 4) I'm going on holiday tomorrow.
  - Bye, George. ....
- 5) Well, John, I hear you're fifteen today.
- 6) So you're ready for the party. You look wonderful, dear.

## 10 Work in pairs, greet or congratulate one another on

- a) a birthday
- b) Mother's Day
- c) the New Year
- d) one of you getting a diploma
- e) one of you going away on holiday
- f) one of you getting a new job
- g) Easter Day
- h) Christmas
- i) St. Valentine's Day

## Do It on Your Own

## Write the same in English.

А. Храбрый заяц, удивительные насекомые, глупый страус, умная обезьяна, ленивый медведь, белая ромашка, большой дуб, славная белочка, вечнозеленая ель, высокая сосна, тонкая береза, голубые незабудки, маленький соловей, прекрасная сирень, яркий подсолнух, синий василек, красная гвоздика, сильный слон, могучий лев, английские дубы.

В. Покормить кроликов, сфотографировать жирафа, увидеть слона, встретить ежа, посадить жасмин, полить желтые нарциссы, выращивать анютины глазки, наблюдать за лебедями.

## Use the right verb form to complete the sentences.

1) Your mother is in the kitchen. She (cook) all morning. 2) We never (see) a pheasant. 3) You (learn) English for four years! 4) I (know) Victor since I (come) to St. Petersburg. 5) (See) you Tanya this week? When you (see) her? 6) Rose (wait) for her friend for an hour already. She (come) yet? 7) We always (want) to have a small house in the country. 8) My elder brother always (love) animals. He has a lot of pets at home. 9) How long the children (sleep)? 10) What you (do) all afternoon? 11) I (have) this watch since my birthday.

The painter forgot to put the names of the flowers under the pictures. Do it for him.





















# The ABC of Ecology

# Step One

## Do It Together

- Listen to the tape, em (44), and say when these people are talking.
- 1 January, 14 February, 30 April, 2 September, 25 December, 5 October
- Listen to the tape, [45], and sing along.

## **Green Fields**

(by Terry Gilkyson, Rich Dehr, Frank Miller)

Once there were green fields kissed by the sun.

однажды

Once there were valleys where rivers

ed to run, когда-то текли

Once there was blue sky with white

clouds high above,

в вышине

Once they were part of an everlasting love.

вечная

We were the lovers who strolled through green fields.

бродили

Home to the green fields and me once ag

сердце упустили свою мечту

проник в мое

исчезли;

освещенные

the sun.

to run.

away.

to my heart,

dreams depart.

used to roam?

on the roam.

home.

again.

clouds hide the day.

когда-то гуляли заставило тебя

уехать

продолжать искать скрывают

ничего не осталось

буду продолжать ждать, till = until

блуждает

0

## Focus

Green fields are gone now, parched by

Gone from the valleys where rivers used

Gone with the cold wind that swept in-

Gone with the lovers who let their

Where are the green fields that we

I'll never know what made you run

How can I keep searching when dark

I only know there's nothing here for me,

Nothing in this wide world left for me to

But I'll keep on waiting till you return,

I'll keep on waiting till the day you learn.

You can't be happy while your heart's

You can't be happy until you bring it

Запомни третью форму следующих глаголов:

blow — blew — blown [bləʊn] — дуть

draw — drew — drawn [dro:n] — рисовать

fly — flew — flown [fləʊn] — летать

grow — grew — grown [grəʊn] — расти

wear — wore — worn [wo:n] — носить

ecology [ґkɒləʤi] — экология

- Choose the right form of the verbs to complete the sentences: past simple or present perfect.
  - 1) What Nick (wear) at the party? I don't know. I (see, not) him then. 2) Look! Bob (draw) a very good picture. I like it. 3) John (fly) to Paris yesterday. 4) Jane is not in Moscow. She (fly) to St. Petersburg. 5) Mrs Stubbs (grow) beautiful forget-menots in her garden last spring. 6) My little granddaughter (grow) a very big tomato. Would you like to look at it? 7) How long you (wear) this dress? I don't remember. I know that I (wear) it for years. 8) A cold wind is blowing out in the street. It (blow) since morning. 9) Have you ever (fly) a kite? 10) Mr Dixon (fly) to Canada last week. 11) How quickly these flowers (grow)! 12) Look, what animal your cousin (draw)!
- 4 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, 📻 (46), and repeat.

A

influence ['influens] — влиять study ['stʌdi] — изучать between [bi'twi:n] — между (двумя) relation [ri'leifən] — 1) отношение; 2) родственник each [i:tʃ] — каждый environment [in'vaiərənmənt] — окружающая среда surround [sə'raund] — окружать health [helθ] — здоровье

collect [kə'lekt] — собирать population [,pppjo'leɪʃən] — население, популяция number ['nʌmbə] — 1) количество; 2) число size [saiz] — размер behaviour [bɪ'heɪvjə] — поведение nowadays ['navədeɪz] — в наши дни survive [sə'vaɪv] — выжить

B.

influence: to influence people, to influence somebody's life. His speech influenced the students. Computers have influenced the world of science a lot.

**study**: to study to be a journalist, to study music, to study science at school. She often goes to the library to study there.

**between:** between the two streets, between you and me. The pencil lay between the books.

relation: our relations, their relations. What are the relations between these countries? In relation to sth. I have a lot (nothing) to say in relation to this problem.

each: each species, each boy, to speak to each other, to know each other. We often send e-mails to each other.

environment: an unhappy home environment. We should always think of our environment.

**surround:** to surround a garden, to surround a playground. The air that surrounds us is not always good for breathing.

surroundings: He was happy to be at home again in his usual surroundings.

health: poor health, good health, to be in good health. My granny is rather old but she is in good health.

healthy: healthy surroundings, healthy food.

**collect:** to collect pictures, to collect dolls, to collect postcards. Some children love collecting different things.

collection: a wonderful collection of books.

**population:** the population of the city, the population of the country. What is the population of London? Tanzania's elephant population is about 55,000.

number: 1) a/the number of animals, a/the number of birds. I have a number of English books at home. The number of children in our family is three. 2) 5 — is a number, 397 and 78 are also numbers.

size: the size of a room, the size of a vocabulary. Your flat is the same size as mine. What size shoes do you wear? — Size 36 (shoes).

behaviour: bad behaviour, the pupils' behaviour, to watch animals' behaviour, problem behaviour. Ann was sick of her brother's behaviour.

nowadays: A lot of people travel by air nowadays. People use computers everywhere nowadays.

survive: to survive the fire, to survive in the ocean. He survived in the desert for a week on biscuits and water.

## Say the same differently. Use the new words.

Example: Jenny buys all the interesting postcards she can find. It is her hobby. Jenny collects postcards.

1) John spends a lot of time learning geography. 2) These two countries have very good contacts. 3) The science that studies how living things live in relation to each other and their environment is one of the most important sciences nowadays. 4) These days people work a lot on computers. 5) People should think a lot

about the surroundings in which they live. 6) Mr Robinson decided to put a high wall around the castle. 7) Why is it important for children to eat good food? 8) What is the number of people who live in London? 9) Julia has got a lot of good books at home. 10) I'd like to ask you some questions.

6 A. There are words that sound alike in many languages and mean the same. We call them "international" words. Read the text and find in it 12 international words.

## What Is Ecology?

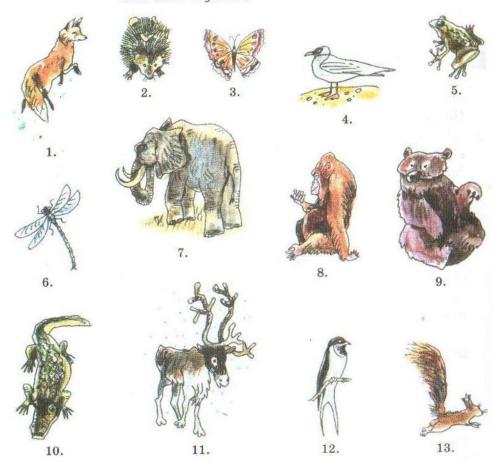
No living thing or group of living things can live and grow in isolation [,aisə'leifən]. All organisms, both plants and animals, need¹ energy to develop and all species of living things influence the lives of others. Ecology is a science. It studies how plants, animals and other living things live in relation to each other and to their environment. People have always studied living things in their natural ['nætʃərəl] environment, in other words, they have always studied the air, the water, the soil and all the other things that surround a person, animal or plant. The environment can influence the growth and health of living things. Ecologists also study what happens to different species. They collect information [,infə'meifən] about their population number, diet ['daiət], form, size and behaviour. Ecology is one of the most important sciences nowadays. It teaches us how to survive in the modern world.

- B. Listen to the tape, (47), and read the text again after it.
- A. Read the text "What Is Ecology?" again and complete the sentences.
  - 1) Ecology is a ....
  - 2) Ecology studies ....
  - 3) A natural environment is ....
  - 4) Ecology teaches us ....
  - 5) Ecologists collect information about ....
  - B. Answer the questions about ecology.
- 1) Why do people so often speak about ecology nowadays? What makes ecology an important science? 2) When did people first start speaking about ecology? 3) The information of what sciences

does ecology use? 4) What are some of the problems ecologists are trying to solve<sup>1</sup>? 5) How can the environment influence a living thing? Can you give an example? 6) What is human ecology? What does it study? 7) What is your natural environment? Do you think it is healthy?

## What is their natural environment? What do they feed on?

Example: Fish. Fish live in water. Rivers, lakes, seas and oceans are their natural environment. They feed on other fish, water plants and other water organisms.



<sup>1</sup> to solve [splv] a problem — решить проблему

<sup>1</sup> to need sth — нуждаться в чем-то



## Focus

Как ты уже знаешь, многие слова в английском языке образуются при помощи суффиксов. Познакомься с некоторыми из них.

	-			
-	Ŧ	ü	2	n
	٠,	ı	u	

collect — collection inform — information populate — population

-th

wide — width (ширина) long — length (длина) grow — growth (рост) -ance

important - importance

## -ist

science — scientist ecology — ecologist piano — pianist

### -ment

develop — development

# 9 Read the text and complete it with the derivatives of the words on the right.

Mr Fowles is a \_(1) .

He collects \_(2) and \_(3) facts about wild birds. For example he is interested in \_(4) facts related to puffins, very \_(5) sea birds. Mr Fowles often goes to one of the islands in the North Sea to study the \_(6) of puffins living there. He knows a lot about these birds: the \_(7) and \_(8) of their wings, the number of

and (10). The local (11) say Mr Fowles is

science inform interest differ usual



populate wide long develop grow ecology



## Focus

chicks they have, the birds' \_(9)

of great help to them.

## All, Both, Each

Слово **all** (*все*) относится к предметам или людям численностью больше двух. Определенный артикль после него используется в тех случаях, когда речь идет о конкретных предметах или людях.

All people want to be happy. (Имеются в виду все люди вообще.) All the pupils in my class like school parties. (Имеются в виду конкретные люди.)

Слово **both** [bəv $\theta$ ] (*оба, обе*) относится к предметам или людям, число которых — два. Определенный артикль после него может как употребляться, так и не употребляться.

Both children like biology.

Both the children are very young

Обрати внимание, что слова all и both в предложении употребляются:

- 1) после глагола to be (We are both happy. They are all at home now.);
- 2) а также после модальных глаголов и первого вспомогательного глагола. (They *can both* speak English. We *have all* come back.)

В отличие от слов **both** и **all**, слово **each** ( $\kappa a \varkappa \mu \mu \bar{\nu}$ ) сочетается с глаголами в третьем лице единственного числа.

Both students know this. Each student knows this.

All the books are new. Each of these books is new. (Ho: They all like rock music.)

## 10 Put the words all and both in the right place in the sentences.

E x a m p l e: The stories tell us about life in older times. Both stories tell us about life in older times.

- 1) We are ready to help you if you need our help.
- 2) People know that they need friends.
- 3) The singers have come to the concert hall.
- 4) The two brothers enjoy playing tennis.
- 5) These six chairs should stand around the table.
- 6) The two friends are from Scotland.
- 7) My parents watch comedies and dramas.
- 8) We can understand other people's problems.
- 9) Chemistry and physics are sciences.
- 10) The children are playing in the school garden.
- 11) Ann's parents are doctors.

## Do It on Your Own

- 11 Complete the sentences with the new words.
  - 1) The man was in good h... because he lived in happy s...s.
  - 2) Barbara is c... money for our trip. 3) The soldiers s... the town but did not attack it. 4) People all over the world talk a lot about

e... and its problems. 5) It is difficult to s... in a desert if you have no water. 6) It is fun to watch the g... of a sunflower. 7) What's her c... of pictures like? What is its s...? 8) What subjects do they s... in the 8<sup>th</sup> form? 9) Jane says her parents i... her interests when she was very young. They taught her to like sciences. 10) How big is the p... of Moscow n...?

## 12 Fill in prepositions1 where necessary.

1) People have always studied living things ... their natural environment. 2) How does our environment influence ... our children? 3) I don't think people living ... isolation could be happy.

4) Ecologists study what happens ... different species of birds and animals. 5) What size ... shoes do you wear? 6) What are the relations ... the two families? 7) Young people often send e-mails ... each other. 8) Mr Brown is 92 years old but he is ... good health.

9) What's the number ... children in your family? 10) Nowadays people often travel ... air.

# Step Two

## Do It Together

- Now you will hear a text, (48), about climate. Listen to the text and say which of the facts are true, false or not mentioned in it.
  - 1) Climate all over the world has become hotter.
  - 2) Climate is changing nowadays.
  - 3) Climate influences the life of people more than the life of plants and animals.
  - 4) Climate in Europe has changed recently.
  - 5) Winters in Europe are colder nowadays than in the twentieth century.
  - 6) Summer temperatures in Europe can be more than thirty degrees above zero.



## Focus

Известный тебе предлог места **between** обозначает «между двумя объектами/субъектами». Если же количество объектов больше чем два, то употребляется предлог **among** [ə'mʌŋ], который переводится словами между, среди.

I could see a small house between the two trees.

I could see a small house among the old trees (more than two).

Запомни следующие словосочетания:

between you and me — между нами (говоря)

Between you and me, she has some problems with her best friend.

in between = between — между

She sat in between her two sons.

Только in between употребляется в конце предложения.

Kate has English at 10 a.m., science at 2 p.m. and music in between.

## Look at the pictures and say where they are.



1) the children



2) Peter Sam Kate



3) the red car



4) the low table



5) the road



6) the monkey

fill in prepositions [,prepə'zɪʃənz] — вставьте предлоги

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> not mentioned ['menfənd] — не упомянуты, не упоминаются



## **Focus**

Тебе хорошо знаком английский модальный глагол must, означающий должен, должны. Необходимость выполнения какого-либо действия или обладания каким-либо предметом можно выразить также при помощи глаголов need (to) и have (to).

Sue needs to buy herself a new pen, she has lost her old one.

Заметь, что глаголы have и need в этом значении не являются модальными и строят вопросы и отрицания при помощи вспомогательного глагола (do, does, did).

They don't need to come until six o'clock.

They don't have to come at six.

Если нужно сказать, что человек вынужден что-то делать из-за независящих от него обстоятельств, следует использовать глагол to have (to).

We have nothing to eat, somebody has to go to the shop.

В том случае, если следует подчеркнуть, что нечто требуется кому(чему)либо, так как оно крайне необходимо для дальнейшей деятельности (существования), используется глагол to need.

Plants need light in order to survive.

Если же требуется сказать, что человеку нужно сделать что-то единожды, употребляется оборот have got to.

I've got to take Rex out. (Usually my father does it but now he is ill.)

## A. Fred works for Mr Brown. Speak about Fred's duties1. Use the word has (to).

Example: get up at six Fred has to get up at 6 a. m.



1) make tea



2) answer telephone calls





3) clean Mr Brown's clothes



5) take Mr Brown's dog out



7) wash Mr Brown's car



4) buy books and maps in the shop



6) water the flowers



8) put the letters on Mr Brown's desk

<sup>1</sup> duty (duties) — обязанность, долг

## B. And what are your usual duties?

- 1) Do you have to get up early?
- 2) Do you have to make breakfast?
- 3) Do you have to make your bed?
- 4) Do you have to feed your pet(s)?
- 5) Do you have to wash the plates?
- 6) Do you have to do the room(s)?
- 7) Do you have to go to the shops?
- 8) Do you have to help any members of your family?
- 9) Do you have to wash the car?
- 10) Do you have to clean the floors?
- 11) What other things do you have to do?

## C. Name 3-5 things you've got to do this evening (tomorrow).

## What do these words mean?

- 1) Isolation means (a) being with others.
  - b) not being with others.
- 2) An organism is
- a) a living animal or plant.
- b) a very small organ.
- a) the place where we live.
- 3) Environment is
- b) our planet.
- a) the study of people's behaviour and the way people, animals and plants live together.
- 4) Ecology is

5) An ecologist is

- b) the study of the environment and the way people, animals and plants live together.
- a) a person who loves the natural world.
- b) a scientist who studies the environment.

- a) a group of people living in the same place or plants growing in the same place.
- 6) Population is
- b) a group of people or animals living in the same place.

## Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, 📺 (49), and repeat.

A

cut [kat] — резать
without [wið'aut] — без
nature ['neɪʧə] — природа
natural ['næʧərəl] — природный, естественный
pollute [pə'luːt] — загрязнять
pollution [pə'luːfən] — загрязнение
waste [weɪst] — отходы
dump [dʌmp] — свалка
danger ['deɪnʤə] — опасность

dangerous ['deɪnʤərəs] — опасный pour [pɔ:] — лить, сливать factory ['fæktəri] — фабрика power ['paʊə] — сила, мощь; власть powerful ['paʊəfəl] — сильный, мощный; обладающий большой властью power station ['paʊə,steɪʃən] — электростанция

B.

cut (cut, cut): to cut an apple, to cut bread. I'm going to cut the cake now. To cut down forests.

without: without food or water, without air. I can't make soup without potatoes. Without doing sth. They left without saying goodbye.

nature: beautiful nature, mother Nature. I would like to visit the Far East to enjoy its nature.

natural: natural gas, natural talent. A river is a natural waterway, but a canal [kə'næl] is not. It is natural to smile when you are happy.

pollute: to pollute the water (air, soil). People mustn't pollute the environment.

pollution: water pollution, air pollution. Where does air pollution in the cities come from?

waste: Where do you put waste? Things that we throw away are waste.

waste of time: It's a waste of time to water the garden when it is raining.

dump: a large dump, a town dump. Take all these things to the town rubbish<sup>1</sup> dump.

danger: a big danger, a danger to small children, to be in danger, to be out of danger. This is a place where children can play without danger. The red colour usually means danger.

dangerous: a dangerous animal, a dangerous plant, a dangerous

sport. Air pollution is a dangerous thing.

**pour:** to pour coffee into a cup, to pour water into a pot, to pour toxic waste into rivers and seas. Sit down and I'll pour you some juice.

factory: a big factory. There are very few factories in this town. At the Ford factory, they make cars.

power: electric power, a lot of power, to have power, to do everything in one's power. He did everything in his power to help me. power station: There are a lot of power stations in Russia.

powerful: a powerful car, a powerful president. They say Sir Winston Churchill was a powerful man.

- 6 Look at the pairs of words. In each pair there is a word you know. Read the sentences below and guess what the other word in each pair means.
  - to influence influence
  - · dump to dump
  - · waste to waste
  - · diet to diet
  - · relation to relate
  - environment environmental
  - pollute polluted
  - polluted unpolluted
  - 1) Television has a strong influence on people.
  - 2) People often dump waste in the forests.
  - 3) Don't waste your time, do something useful.
  - 4) Would you like some cake, Jane? No, thanks, I am dieting.
  - 5) Ecology and biology relate (to each other).
  - 6) Nowadays we have a lot of ecological environmental problems.
- 7) The water here is polluted and dangerous to drink.
- 8) The rivers in this part of the country are unpolluted.

A. Read the text "Our Environment" and find in it equivalents of the words and word combinations after it.

### Our Environment

The environment is all the things we need to be able to live—clean water to drink and to wash with, air to breathe and healthy food to eat. We can't live without plants and animals. They help to make the soil, they clean the water and air, and they give us all our food.

The world is our home and we want to see it clean and beautiful. At the same time we take from nature as much as we can. We cut down forests and build farms, houses, roads and factories on the land. While doing it we pollute the environment. We make a lot of waste some of which is toxic. We dump domestic and industrial waste in the country and pour toxic waste into our rivers, seas and oceans.

Cars and factories, plants<sup>1</sup> and power stations pollute the air and make it dangerous to breathe.

People have to think about all these ecological problems if they want to survive.

- 1) чтобы мы могли жить
- 2) воздух, чтобы дышать
- 3) формировать почву
- 4) столько, сколько можем
- 5) мы вырубаем леса
- 6) мы загрязняем окружающую среду
- 7) мы производим массу отходов
- 8) мы сбрасываем бытовые и промышленные отходы
- 9) сливаем ядовитые отходы
- 10) опасный для дыхания
- 11) выжить
- B. Listen to the tape, (50), and read the text again after it.
- In how many ways can you complete these sentences?
  - 1) People can't live without ....
  - 2) People need to make our planet ....
  - 3) We would like to see our rivers and lakes ....
  - 4) It is dangerous to ....
  - 5) There are a lot of things we can take from nature: ....
  - 6) We pollute the environment when we ....
  - 7) People should always remember that ....
  - 8) Let's make our country ....

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> rubbish [′гʌbɪ∫] — мусор; з∂.: мусорная (свалка)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> a plant — a factory that makes cars, machines, etc.

Make up 8 sentences about ecology.

planet country air rivers, lakes and seas food forests people water

healthy to eat. safe1 to live on. clean and not dangerous to bathe in. powerful and happy to live in.

unpolluted and clean to breathe. rich in birds and animals. clean and safe to drink.

healthy and happy.

Our

### Focus

В тексте "Our Environment" и упражнениях после него тебе встретились сочетания с инфинитивом типа: water to drink, air to breathe, food to eat. Во всех этих случаях инфинитив поясняет, уточняет имя существительное и является его определением. Подобные предложения часто используются в современном английском языке и могут вызывать некоторые трудности при переводе. Ср.:

should be

water to drink — вода для питья (чтобы пить) air to breathe — воздух для дыхания (чтобы дышать) food to eat — продукты, предназначенные для еды (чтобы есть)

# 10 Put the statements below in the right categories.

#### Dos

Plant more trees to make your country green.

#### Don'ts

our air clean.

.............

Turn<sup>2</sup> the rivers into dumps. Build factories on river banks. Feed animals in cold seasons.

<sup>1</sup> safe — безопасный

Cut down trees, which make

Help animals to survive.

Pour toxic waste into the rivers and lakes.

Dump old cars in forests.

Burn toxic waste.

Clean rivers and lakes.

Be careful with farm waste.

Use rivers for washing cars.

Use fewer cars.

Make Clean Air laws.

Take lorries out of city or town centres.

Pay big money if you're a polluter.

Make laws to control pollution.

Say what is pollution and why it can be dangerous.

## Do It on Your Own

### Use between or among.

1) Julia couldn't choose ... two dresses. 2) We spent last summer ... friends in Canada. 3) Elephants are ... the largest animals in the world. 4) The new American singer is popular ... young people. 5) I don't like Paul very much, but that's ... you and me. 6) The revolver lay ... the two boxes. 7) The tents were situated ... the high trees. 8) There is a bridge ... the island and the bank of the river. 9) I had English and Geography class and lunch ... them. 10) You can choose ... cucumber salad and tomato salad.

## Complete the text using the new words.

Everyone knows that life in modern world has become rather d (1). In big cities there are a lot of f (2) s and cars that p (3) the air. The water is p\_(4) too because factories and plants p\_(5) their w\_(6) into the rivers, lakes and seas. In the country the e (7) can be also p (8). People d (9) the industrial and domestic w (10) everywhere: in the forests, fields, near the rivers and lakes. The food people eat is not always h (11). All these are serious e (12) problems and we must solve them soon.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> to turn [t3:n] — зд.: превращать

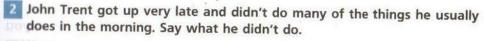
# Step Three

# Do It Together

1 Listen to the story of dinosaurs<sup>1</sup>, [22] (51), and say which of the facts below are true and which are false.

# Dinosaure — Very Big Lizards<sup>2</sup>

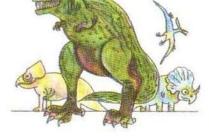
- 1) People have never seen dinosaurs alive<sup>3</sup>.
- 2) All dinosaurs ate plants.
- 3) Plant-eating dinosaurs could be as tall as 8 metres.
- 4) Tyrannosaurus<sup>4</sup> killed other animals to eat.
- 5) They found dinosaur bones only in Antarctica.
- 6) Scientists know about 30 different species of dinosaurs.
- 7) Scientists don't know why dinosaurs died out.



E x a m p l e: John didn't do morning exercises.

John left the house without doing morning exercises.

- 1) John didn't make his bed.
- 2) He didn't take a shower.
- 3) He didn't take his dog out.
- 4) John didn't have breakfast.
- 5) He didn't drink his usual cup of tea.
- 6) He didn't help his mother to wash the plates.
- 7) He didn't take his lunch with him.
- 8) He didn't say goodbye to his granny.
- 9) He didn't kiss his mother goodbye.



- Match the two columns.
  - the place in which people live and work
     a scientist who studies the environment and the way plants, animals and people live togeth-
  - 3) to make air, water and soil too dirty and dangerous for people
  - 4) useless materials

er in relation to each other

- 5) a place usually outside 1 a town where people collect waste
- 6) the world with all living things, the land and the seas
- 7) a large building with machines that give electricity [I,lek'trisiti]
- 8) good and useful for your health

- a) waste
- b) pollute
- c) nature
- d) environment
- e) healthy
- f) power station
- g) ecologist
- h) dump
- A. Read the text and match its paragraphs with the titles. There are 6 titles but only 5 paragraphs. One title is extra.
  - a) Land without Trees
  - b) No Air to Breathe
  - c) Dangerous Waters
  - d) Toxic Food
  - e) Problems Important for Everyone
  - f) No Food for Animals
  - 1) The word *environment* means what is around us. People who live in big industrial centres, cities and towns live in a town environment. For others their environment is the countryside<sup>2</sup>. Everybody who lives in towns or in the country breathes air, drinks water, uses soil which should be clean. But are they really clean?
  - 2) The water in the oceans, seas, and rivers has become polluted in many places. If people drink this water, they can get ill or even die. People use oceans and seas as big dumps and pour industrial

a dinosaur ['daməsə:] — динозавр

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> a lizard ['lizəd] — ящерица <sup>3</sup> alive [ə'laɪv] — живые

<sup>4</sup> a tyrannosaurus [ti,rænə'sə:rəs] — тираннозавр

<sup>1</sup> outside — вне, за пределами

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> countryside ['kantrisaid] — сельская местность

- 3) The food we eat is not always healthy as fruit and vegetables can grow on polluted soil and become dangerous too. The meat we get from sheep and cows can be bad for our health if these sheep and cows eat grass that grows on polluted land.
- 4) People cut down trees and many birds and animals can't have homes in their usual places and they begin dying out. If the situation doesn't change, soon we shall live in a very different world a world without a number of species that we know now.
- 5) Nowadays people feel that it is more difficult to breathe: in big cities the air has become badly polluted. Most of the pollution comes from cars and buses. Old people and little children feel bad and get ill because of the polluted air.

B. Listen to the tape, (52), and read the text again after it.



#### Focus

В английском языке существует конструкция **used to**, используемая в повествовании о событиях, которые случались в прошлом, особенно если нужно подчеркнуть, что больше они не происходят.

I don't skate now but I *used to skate* a lot when I was a child. — Сейчас я не катаюсь на коньках, но я много катался, когда был ребенком.

When my granny was younger, she *used to travel* to different places of our country in summer. — Когда моя бабушка была моложе, летом она много путешествовала по нашей стране.

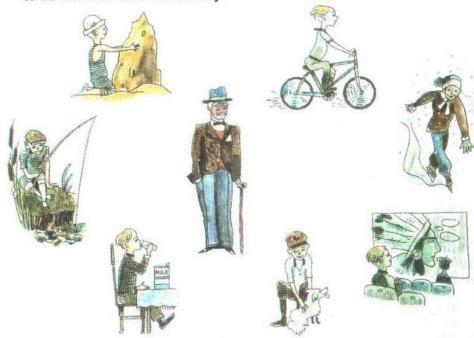
Вопросы и отрицания с данной конструкцией образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола *did*.

Did you use to work here? We didn't use to read books about dinosaurs.

Обрати внимание на то, что после этой конструкции обычно употребляется инфинитив, но в некоторых случаях он опускается.

I don't play the piano now, but I used to (do it).

Mr Wilson is a very old man. Look at the pictures and say what he used to do when he was a small boy.



Say what your relatives or friends used to do but don't do anymore.

Example: My sister used to get up late but she doesn't any longer.

to take long walks, to live in the country, to go to the cinema, to watch television a lot, to work in the garden, to collect pictures, to write poems, to work on the computer, to read at night, to dance, to drive a car

Say how things happened some time ago and how they happen now.

E x a m p l e: light their streets and houses with gas/use electricity

Some time ago people used to light their streets and houses with gas but now they use electricity.

- 1) travel on horseback/travel by car, train and bus
- 2) wash things by hand/wash things in a washing machine [mə'ʃiːn]
- 3) write letters/send e-mails

4) write books by hand/print1 books

5) read more books/watch a lot of television

6) have big families with a lot of children/have smaller families

7) die early/live longer lives

8) walk upstairs and downstairs/use lifts

9) know not so much about our planet/know a lot about it

10) dream about flying to the stars/do it

8 Read the information below and complete it with the right figures. (The answers are on page 155.)

# How Long Does It Take?

about million years to form from a cloud of gas.	a) 6
2) It takes the Earth days to go around the sun.	b) 22
3) It takes the moon just over days to travel round the Earth.	c) 4,600
4) It took the English language about years to develop into the language we speak today.	
5) When Romans came to the British Isles in 53 BC, they built some very good roads. In those days it took only days by horse to get from London to Rome. About 1,500 years later in the 19 <sup>th</sup> century it took just as long.	d) 200
6) It takes only minutes to fly from Westray Island to Papa Westray near Scotland. It is the shortest flight we know.	e) 2
7) An early bike that was popular in the 17 <sup>th</sup> century had no pedals. It took years to make a bike with pedals.	f) 27
8) The eucalyptus <sup>3</sup> grows quicker than any other tree: it takes about year to grow 10.5 metres tall. 9) The sloth <sup>4</sup> is the slowest land animal in the world.	g) 1,600 h) 365 1/4
It takes a sloth about minutes to go 100 metres. The best runner in the world can do this distance in under 10 seconds.	i) 1

to print [print] — печатать

- 9 Read and act out the dialogues. Then change parts of the dialogues using the words in the right column and act them out again.
  - Could you wait a second? I'll change my clothes and come back.

— A second? It usually takes you hours to change your clothes.

— Don't be silly! It won't take me more than five minutes, you'll see.

make tea water the plants walk the dog call Sally wash the plates

- 2) I hate washing the plates, it usually takes me hours.
  - Does it? I wash the plates very quickly. It doesn't take me more than 10 minutes.

- Really?!

doing my homework cleaning the room cooking washing the car

3) — How long will it take me to do the History Museum?

— It will take you rather long, it's a very big museum.

— I see.

to get to St. Petersburg to grow a fruit garden to learn English to do this exercise

Answers to exercise 8, page 154. 1 c, 2 h, 3 f, 4 g, 5 a, 6 e, 7 d, 8 i, 9 b

### Do It on Your Own

Use the word take in the right form.

1) In older times it ... people weeks to travel from Moscow to St. Petersburg. Now it ... us from 1.5 to 8 hours. 2) I am going to the shops. It ... me rather a long time to buy everything I need. Don't wait for me. 3) It ... people a long time to understand that the future of our planet is in danger. 4) Yesterday it ... us half an hour to clean the classroom and decorate it for the holiday. 5) How long ... you to finish writing the story? Will it be ready tomorrow? 6) It never ... me longer than 20 minutes to do my room. I do it very quickly. 7) Last year it ... the Browns two weeks

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Solar System — Солнечная система

a eucalyptus [.ju:kə'lıptəs] — эвкалипт

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> a sloth [sləυθ] — ленивец (зоол.)

to find a nice house in the country. 8) It usually ... my father about an hour to get home from work. 9) My brother has just become a student. It ... him five years to complete his university course. 10) How long ... you to learn English? You speak it very well.

11 Insert the missing words, where necessary.

1) Nowadays a lot of animals and birds are ... danger. 2) It is dangerous to cut ... forests. 3) Reading such books is just a waste ... time. 4) The population ... tigers ... the Far East is getting smaller ... number. 5) There was a narrow road running ... the trees in the forest. 6) Scientists want to know how living things develop in relation ... each other. 7) A lot of factories pour their industrial waste ... rivers, seas and lakes. 8) Ecologists can help us to live ... our planet ... making our environment dangerous. 9) Mr Poller is 92 but he is ... good health. 10) How does the sun influence ... the people of the Earth?

# Step Four

# Do It Together

- A. Listen to the text "Rainforests", [ (53), and complete these sentences.
  - 1) Rainforests used to grow on different continents: in ....
  - 2) A hundred million years ago rainforests grew ....
  - 3) The ... rainforest is famous all over the world.
  - 4) In rainforests it rains ....
  - 5) In rainforests the usual temperature is ....
  - 6) In the twentieth century people began ....
  - B. Why do you think rainforests are so important for the life on the planet?
- 2 Work in pairs. Find out how long it takes your partners
  - · to do their room (flat)
  - · to get to school
  - · to do their homework
- · to do the shopping
- · to wash the plates
- · to help their grandparents

Where Mr Richardson used to live and what he used to do there.



# 10 years old (on the farm)

- · to feed animals
- · to plant trees
- · to grow fruit and vegetables
- · to ride horses
- to help his parents about the farm

# 20 years old (in London)

- · to go to University
- · to travel by underground
- to visit museums
- · to meet a lot of interesting people
- · to have a lot of friends
- Say what life used to be like on our planet many years ago in prehistoric1 times.
  - · water
  - · land
  - · ice
  - climate

- · forests
- · animals
- people
- Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [ (54), and repeat.

A

badge [bædʒ] — значок member ['membə] — член группы (организации, общества) protect [prə'tekt] — защищать protected [prə'tektid] — защищенный

endangered [in'deind;əd] — вымирающий extinct [ik'stinkt] — вымерший, исчезнувший destroy [di'stroi] — разрушать habitat ['hæbitæt] — естественная среда обитания

<sup>1</sup> prehistoric ['pri:hı'stɔ:rɪk] — доисторический

member: a member of the group, a member of the party. There used to be ninety members in our club but there are only thirty now.

**protect:** to protect life, to protect birds and animals, to protect from danger. We should protect wildlife on the earth. John wore a jacket to protect himself from the cold.

protected: a protected species. Lily-of-the-valley is a protected species of flowers.

endangered: endangered species, endangered animals. Elephants in Africa have become endangered animals. There are many endangered animals nowadays, for example African and Indian lions, mountain gorillas [gəˈrɪləz] in Africa.

extinct: to become extinct, extinct species, extinct animals. The Tasmanian tiger became extinct in 1936. What extinct animals can you name?

destroy: to destroy towns, to destroy a castle. People have destroyed half of the world's rainforests.

habitat: a habitat of plants, a habitat of animals. What is the natural habitat of tigers?

# 6 Answer these questions.

- 1) What is the natural habitats of fish, bears, elephants, gorillas?
- 2) What animals are extinct animals?
- 3) There are a lot of endangered species of animals and plants nowadays. Can you name some of them?
- 4) How can people protect endangered animals?
- 5) Can you give an example of how man destroys the habitats of birds, animals and plants?
- 6) Why do people destroy forests? How does this influence the wildlife? the life of people?
- 7) Do you think it is easy for different animal species to survive in the  $21^{\rm st}$  century? Why?
- 8) Have you ever been a member of some ecological organization? Would you like to become one?

Listen to the tape, [55]. Read the text and find in it some important information about WWF and Greenpeace. Then act the dialogue out.

### An Unusual Badge

Jane: Miss Chapman, may I ask you something?

Miss Ch.: Yes, Jane, what is it?

Jane: What's that badge you are wearing?

Miss Ch.: This panda badge? It shows that I am a member of WWF.

Jane: What's WWF? I've never heard of it.

Miss Ch.: WWF means "Worldwide Fund for Nature". It's an international organization that protects wildlife on the planet. I believe WWF needs our support because it is very important to help wild animals to survive.

Jane: What do they do to help animals to survive?

M is s Ch.: Different things. Mostly they help endangered animals. For example, if the population of some species is very small, it means they can become extinct. Ecologists protect them and try to make their population larger.

Jane: I see. That's very interesting. They are like Greenpeace. I'd like to work with Greenpeace. I think they are very active and brave. They stop those people who kill endangered animals and destroy their habitats.

Miss Ch.: I know. All ecological organizations are useful. The more of them the better. Everyone should do what they can.

## Whose badges are they?

Example: Badge one belongs to a pupil. .







1.

2.

3

# Do It on Your Own

- 11 Write 5 true sentences.
  - 1) The more time I spend with my friends, ....

2) The longer I learn English, ....

3) The older I get, ....

4) The more I think about the future, ....

5) The better I understand life, ....

- 12 Use the new words to complete the sentences.
  - 1) Tigers living in the Far East of Russia have become e... species.
  - 2) Flamingos live in the tropics. They are water birds, so their h... is lakes and animals.
  - 3) The names of all pr... species of Russia are in the Red Book of plants and animals.

4) Greenpeace tries to stop those who d... nature.

- 5) When people cut down forests, a lot of species become ex....
- 6) It's not easy to p... our world from air, water and soil pollution.
- 7) M...s of ecological organizations often wear b...s to show what their interests and ideas are.

# Step Five

# Do It Together

Read the text, then listen to the tape, (56), and say what information is missing<sup>1</sup> in the text.

# As Dead<sup>2</sup> as a Dodo

You have never seen a dodo. Your friends and teachers have never seen a dodo. Your grandparents never saw a dodo. The last of these large quiet birds died many years ago.

The dodo lived on the island of Mauritius [mə'rɪʃəs]. Dutch ships came to that island and



<sup>2</sup> dead [ded] — мертвый

found these big fat birds. Dodos could not fly but they were not afraid of people.

Visitors to Mauritius killed all the dodos on the island. By the 1690s there were no dodos in the world. Nowadays you can see only bones of these birds and their pictures.

The story of the dodo is very sad and it shows you how dangerous man can be and how easy it is to destroy wildlife.

This is what some people think about ecological problems. With which of their ideas do you agree¹?

### What Can I Do?

Anna: They are beginning to build a new road near our beautiful park. Birds and small animals are afraid of people and the noise from roads. So they will leave this place. My friends and I are going to write to our local politicians [,ppli' tɪʃənz] and ask them to stop building the road.



Liza: I am an animal lover, so I don't eat meat. Sheep, pigs and cows aren't in danger, but they don't live in their natural environment and they die young for meat eaters.



Mike: I always walk or go by bike. People can do something about pollution from cars.



Mr Potter: I give money to protect wild animals — whales and dolphins<sup>2</sup>. I think it is very important to help these wonderful sea animals to survive.



<sup>1</sup> is missing ['misin] — отсутствует

<sup>1</sup> to agree — соглашаться

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> whales [weilz] and dolphins ['dolfinz] — киты и дельфины

Mrs Colton: I used to wear a fox coat and I loved it. But now I think it is terrible to wear a coat from a dead animal. I'll never do it again.



Mark: I never go to the zoo. I hate zoos because I think that animals are not happy there. Zoos are not natural places for any animal.



Sofia: I never buy early spring flowers. Most of them are endangered and I think it is very bad to make money by destroying them!





В английском языке восклицательные предложения строятся с помощью слов what и how. Сравни:

What a wonderful day (it is)! How wonderful the day is!

What a clever boy he is! How clever he is!

What interesting stories! How interesting the stories are!

What cold water! How cold the water is!

Обрати внимание на использование артиклей в восклицательных предложениях с what.

1) В предложениях с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе нужен неопределенный артикль.

What a big park it is! What an interesting book!

2) В предложениях с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе употребляется нулевой артикль1.

What kind gentlemen! What tasty sweets!

3) В предложениях с неисчисляемыми существительными также употребляется нулевой артикль.

What fresh air! What fine weather!

### Say the same in a different way.

#### What ...!

- 1) ...
- 2) What fresh air!
- 3) What beautiful valleys!
- 4) ... 5) ...
- 6) What slow animals!
- 7) ...
- 8) What funny monkeys! 9) ...
- 10) What tasty chocolate!

#### How...!

- 1) How dangerous this place is!
- 2) ...
- 3) ...
- 4) How powerful the King is!
- 5) How charming the babies are!
- 7) How rich this area is!
- 9) How fast the rabbits are!
- 10) ...
- Learn some new words, listen to the tape, (57), and repeat.

save [selv] — спасать law [lo:] — закон government ['qavəmənt] — правительство responsible [ri'sponsibəl] — ответственный hunt [hant] — охотиться

damage ['dæmids] — повредить, нанести урон unfortunately [An'fo:t[anitli] к несчастью recycle [,ri:'saɪkəl] — перерабатывать necessary ['nesisəri] — необходимый

save: to save people, to save from danger. The house was on fire but he saved the pictures. Only hard work can save our project. law: good laws, to make a law, to be against the law. Killing endangered species of animals is against the law. government: the Russian government, the British government. The Government is the people who rule a country or a state.

responsible: a responsible person, a responsible post, to be responsible for sth. Who is responsible for buying the food for dinner? damage: to damage buildings, to damage forests. Pollution has damaged the island's ecology.

hunt: to hunt animals for sth. People have been hunting crocodiles for their teeth. John spent the whole day hunting deer. hunter: a well-known hunter.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> нулевой артикль (zero article) — отсутствие артикля перед именами существительными

recycle: to recycle waste, to recycle paper (glass). Japan recycles

40% (forty per cent) of its waste.

necessary: to be necessary for sb. Such food is necessary for your health. I have packed all the necessary things for our trip. You should come at noon if Alice says it is necessary.

### Complete the sentences.

### Must or Must Not?

1) Governments ... put laws into practice1.

2) Governments ... build factories to recycle waste.

3) We ... support people who damage endangered plants. We ... buy early spring flowers such as the lily-of-the-valley.

4) Politicians ... listen to scientists and do all they can to protect nature.

- 5) Governments ... make laws that can damage the environment.
- 6) All people ... be responsible for the future of our planet.
- 7) Nobody ... hunt endangered animals.
- 8) We all ... work together to save our planet.
- These children belong to the Young Ecologists Club. They are going to have a conference ['konforons ] soon. Say how they are preparing for it.

Example: to make badges for the conference members Pete is responsible for making badges for the conference members.















4) John









7) Rob



8) Helen



9) Alice

1) to interview a famous scientist

- 2) to invite a well-known ecologist to school
- 3) to decorate the hall
- 4) to talk on endangered species of plants and animals
- 5) to talk on the main ecological problems
- 6) to write questions to the members of the local government on the ecology of the place
- 7) to take photos of the local National Park
- 8) to write a letter to the local government to build a new recycling factory
- A. Read the text and say what governments should do to protect nature in their countries.

### Shall We Survive?

People have been polluting the planet on which they live for many years. The result [ri'zalt] is very sad. We all live in a polluted world. Pollution started in a small way, but then it began growing and soon we all shall be in danger. The time has come to save our planet, to protect people, animals and plants from dying.

First of all countries should have strong laws to control pollution. to protect animals and plants. Governments should be responsible for protecting nature. Today the law in some countries says: "The polluter must pay. If a person damages trees or animals, he must also pay." But unfortunately such good laws don't always work.

Scientists often meet and talk about ways of helping nature, and politicians in many countries listen to them and are beginning to talk about this too.

Countries can open national parks. They are big and usually very beautiful places without buildings. These are homes for animals

<sup>1</sup> to put laws into practice — претворять законы в жизнь

living freely and also for birds, trees and flowers. Visitors can go there but they can't hunt there. Politicians can think of ways to stop hunting.

Governments should also find ways to recycle things we have used: paper bags and plastic bags, plastic bottles and cans1, glass and metal things. They should build recycling factories. Governments must control and if necessary close dangerous plants and factories.

We all must work together to make our planet a safe and beautiful place to live.

B. Listen to the tape, (58), and read the text after it again.

- Read the text "Shall We Survive?" again and say
  - · why we all shall be in danger soon
  - · how laws can help to protect nature
  - · why politicians must listen to scientists
- in what way national parks can help to protect wildlife
  - · what things we can recycle and why it is important
  - · who is responsible for making our planet a safe and beautiful place



A. Learn instructing [in'straktin] people how to do things.

The first thing you should do is... — Первое, что нужно сделать, это... The next thing you do is... — Следующее, что ты сделаешь, это...

By the way, don't forget to... — Между прочим, не забудь...

Remember to... — Не забудь...

Another thing to remember is... — Еще о чем нельзя забыть, так это...

Be careful not to... — Смотри не...

B. Complete the text. Use the "instruction" phrases.

## Grow Your Own Violets<sup>2</sup>

(1) is to choose a healthy leaf and cut it off from the plant. (2) is to prepare a pot of good soil. By the way, (3) to wet the soil well. (4) to make the soil soft. Put the leaf into the soil as you see in the picture. (5) not to damage it. Take a glass jar



and cover<sup>1</sup> the leaf with it. The soil should always be wet. (6) is that your young plant should not stand in direct sunshine. You'll see that your violet will soon develop roots and new leaves.

# Do It Together

- Use the articles (a/an, the) where necessary.
  - 1) What ... big ears you have, grandma! 2) How dangerous ... place looks! 3) How ... empty the islands are! 4) What ... unusual clock it is! 5) How brave ... boys are. 6) What ... interesting films! 7) How polluted ... lake is! 8) How sunny ... weather is! 9) What ... funny clothes she wears! 10) What ... tasty vegetables I've bought!
- Write the same in English.

Спасать вымирающих животных, создавать законы, влиять на экологию, загрязнять реки, изучать вымершие виды, перерабатывать отходы, быть ответственным за охрану (защиту) природы, охотиться на диких животных, наносить урон лесам, разрушать места обитания животных.

<sup>1</sup> cans — консервные банки

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> a violet ['varəlit] — фиалка

<sup>1</sup> to cover ['kavə] —  $3\partial$ .: накрывать



# **Keeping Fit**

# Step One

# Do It Together

- Listen to the tape, (59). You will hear two texts. Choose titles for them from those below. There is one extra title.
- a) The Ecology of Man
- b) How to Stop Pollution
  - c) What We Need Is Working Together
- Give your reaction<sup>1</sup> to these phrases as in the example.

Example: The Mississippi is the longest river in the USA.

a) (What/mighty)

What a mighty river it is!

b) (How/mighty)

How mighty the river is!

1) Sid's brother is a famous journalist. (How/proud)

2) Everybody in Russia knows Saratov, Samara and Volgograd that lie on the Volga. (What/famous)

3) These are the longest instructions I have ever read. (How/difficult)  $\,$ 

4) Nowadays many governments have good laws protecting nature. (What/responsible)

5) This badge belongs to a member of our ecological society. (What/unusual)

6) Jane is on a diet. She eats only fruit and vegetables. (How/healthy)

7) A lot of factories dump their waste into this river. (What/dan-

gerous)

8) Mr Richardson is a successful businessman. So many men work for him. (What/powerful)

9) There are some unpolluted places around Moscow. (What/safe)



### **Focus**

В английском языке есть еще одно грамматическое время из группы прошедших времен — **past perfect** (прошедшее совершенное). Оно строится по следующей модели:

### had + V<sub>3</sub>

I had done... He had written... We had met...

Данное время используется для обозначения действия, которое произошло до определенного момента в прошлом.

I had done my flat by 3 o'clock.

I had done my flat by the time mother came back.

Обычно *past perfect* употребляется, когда нужно рассказать о двух действиях в прошлом, подчеркивая, что одно из них произошло раньше, чем другое.

Jane couldn't find the key I **had given** her. — Джейн не могла найти ключ, который я ей когда-то (некоторое время тому назад) дал.

Past perfect часто употребляется со словами after, before, when, as soon as, because, by the time.

As soon as I had washed the plates, mum came.

After Mary had done the shopping, she went back home.

Robin had left before Alice returned.

When Betty phoned, Jim had already sent the e-mail to her.

Look at the pictures and say what they had done by four o'clock yesterday.

Example: Rose had written a letter by four o'clock yesterday.



Rose

<sup>1</sup> reaction [ri'ækfən] — реакция



Mrs Rogers



Ann and Jane



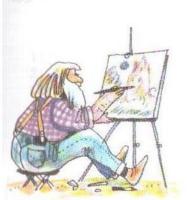
Mrs Brown



Brian



Max Wood



Henry



Kelly Hudson

### Say what these people had just done when it started raining.

Example: Mr Robinson/to put his car into the garage
Mr Robinson had just put his car into the garage when it started raining.

- 1) Larry/to leave his office
- 2) Bobby/to get on a bus
- 3) Mr Newman/to enter the shop
- 4) Dan/to decide to go for a walk
- 5) Ms Forester/to come out into the garden
- 6) The Trembles/to finish supper
- 7) Charles/to turn on the television
- 8) Sharon/to clean the floors
- 9) Lizzy/to wash her sweater
- 10) Mr Mole/to start working in the garden

# Say what you had done yesterday.

- a) before your parent(s) came back home
- b) by the time supper was ready
- c) by 6 p. m. you returned from school

# Learn how to use these new words, [48] (60).



exercise ['eksəsaiz] — физические упражнения, моцион enough [і'nʌf] — достаточно join [фэіп] — присоединяться relax [п'læks] — расслабляться keep [ki:p] — держать, хранить, оставить себе harm [hɑːm] — вред

smoke [sməuk] — курить drug [drʌg] — 1) наркотик; 2) лекарство hard [hɑːd] — 1) adj тяжелый, усердный; 2) adv тяжело, усердно, сильно junk food ['фʌŋk fuːd] — неполноценная пища



exercise: a lot of exercise, to get exercise, to take (have) exercise. Boris should take more exercise.

enough: enough food, enough time, tall enough, quickly enough. Are there enough vegetables to make a salad? Does Ann play the piano well enough?

join: to join the club, to join the group. Alan joined us for a walk. relax: Sit down and try to relax for half an hour.

keep (kept, kept): to keep sth, to keep doing sth, to keep a secret, to keep a diary, to keep (to) a diet, to keep fit. Where can I keep my books? I always keep a carton of milk in the fridge. John kept walking without listening to her. She has kept a diary since childhood. You should take a lot of exercise to keep fit. Try and always keep your word.

harm: a lot of harm, no harm, to do some harm. It'll do you no harm to have some exercise, in fact it will do you a lot of good. If you spend so much time working on the computer, it'll do you more harm than good.

harmful: harmful food, to be harmful for sb or sth. Reading in bed can be harmful for your eyes.

smoke: I don't smoke. Mr Brown smokes only cigars, he doesn't smoke a pipe. Stop smoking, it will damage your health. No smoking!

drug: 1) to take drugs, to use drugs. Jenny has never taken drugs in her life and she says she never will. No drug-taking. 2) Aspirin is a well-known drug that often helps.

hard: 1) hard work, a hard day, hard life. It's hard to believe that we are leaving this place forever. 2) to work hard, to breathe hard, to fight hard. I was trying very hard to remember her name.

junk food: Junk food is not healthy, there is a lot of fat, salt and sugar in it.

# Complete the sentences. Use the new words.

- 1) Paul is a member of our football team now, he  $\dots$  it not long ago.
- 2) Some children prefer ... food to having a real lunch at school. So they buy chocolate, sweets and chips.
- 3) We have a number of very good pupils in my class. They all work very ... and get good marks.
- 4) I'm afraid I haven't got ... money to buy this new disk.
- 5) Victor ... his word and brought us a good dictionary.
- 6) It said "No ...!" on the wall but there stood a man who was ... a cigarette.
- 7) Where do you ... your books? I can't see any bookcase or bookshelves in your room.
- 8) After I had broken my arm, my doctor told me to ... it as much as possible.

- 9) After we had done all the exercises we decided to ... and turned on the music.
- 10) There is a very important law which says that one must not bring ... to the school.
- 11) Drinking alcohol does people more ... than they think. It destroys their minds and personalities<sup>1</sup>.
- 12) Jane looks wonderfully slim. Has she been ... to a diet?



### ocus

В английском языке существует много сложных слов, в которых первой частью является основа **over-** со значением «больше, свыше необходимости».

Сравни:

overpopulation — перенаселение

overeat — переедать

overtired — переутомленный

overwork — перенапрягать(ся), заставлять слишком много работать

## Say the same in Russian.

- 1) I don't like the taste of this fish, you've overcooked it. 2) I've paid 300 roubles for this souvenir and I'm afraid I've overpaid. 3) Not everyone likes soft overripe bananas but I enjoy eating them. 4) When Max opened his eyes in the morning, his clock was showing ten: he had overslept. 5) Please, don't overfeed the dog, too much food does nothing but harm. 6) This time I shall ask you to do not two but three exercises. I hope I'm not overworking you.
- 7) Yesterday I felt overtired, but wasn't able to sleep. 8) We are going to have problems if we overspend the money.
- Read the text and say which of these rules you follow and which you don't follow and why.

# How to Keep Fit

- 1) Take a lot of exercise. Physical ['fizikəl] activity is good for all of us at any age.
- 2) Begin your day with morning exercises. They give you enough energy for the day.

<sup>1</sup> mind [maind] and personality — разум и личность

- 3) Be sporty. Join a sports club or go to the gym and work out1.
- 4) Take enough sleep. Most people need eight hours of sleep to feel well.
- 5) Leave some time for relaxing after a hard working day.
- 6) Spend some time out of doors every day. Fresh air does us a lot of good.
- 7) Limit the time you spend in front of your television or computer to an hour - an hour and a half.
- 8) Keep to a healthy balanced diet. Don't overeat.
- 9) Don't eat junk food. Some kinds of food are harmful.
- 10) Don't smoke or drink alcohol. Never use drugs.
- Which of the rules (ex. 8) do you think are the most important and why? Put them all in order of importance<sup>2</sup>.



Обрати внимание на сочетания слова **enough** с различными частями речи.

enough + noun

adjective + enough adverb + enough

to have enough time

to get enough money

to make enough sandwiches

verb + enough

to be long enough to run quickly enough not to practise enough

## Complete these sentences.

1) John is (old enough/enough old) to go to school. 2) Don't hurry. There is (time enough/enough time) to do it. 3) There is (food enough/enough food) for everyone. 4) The poor man doesn't (eat enough/enough eat). 5) Have I made (enough coffee/coffee enough)? 6) Have we (enough apples/apples enough) for everyone? 7) The days have become (long enough/enough long). 8) Kevin doesn't work (hard enough/enough hard). 9) The road is not (wide enough/enough wide) for two cars. 10) Are there (enough pencils/pencils enough) for all the pupils?

## Do It on Your Own

Write it in English.

Достаточно усердно, достаточно сильный, достаточно воздуха, достаточно быстро, достаточно вопросов, достаточно сложный, достаточно успешный, достаточно энергии.

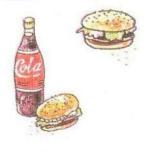
- Match the two parts of the sentences. Compare your results.
  - 1) We had just finished the job
  - 2) They had written the exercise
  - 3) Alice had read the book
  - 4) John had finished watching TV
  - 5) Mary had already had breakfast
  - 6) Victor had heard the news
  - 7) Brian had just left the school building
  - 8) I had already known everything

- a) before the bell rang.
- b) when I entered the kitchen.
- c) by 3 o'clock yesterday.
- d) before I gave it to her.
- e) when it started raining.
- f) before I told him about it.
- g) when Tom brought us some more.
- h) by the time I got the telegramme.

# Step Two

# Do It Together

Listen to the text "Fast Food", [ (61), and complete the sentences.









- 1) We can find fast food restaurants ... .
- 2) It doesn't take ... to have meals in fast food restaurants.
- 3) Nowaday scientists talk a lot about ....

<sup>1</sup> to work out — поддерживать физическую форму

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Put them all in order of importance. — Расположи их (правила) в порядке важности.

- 4) Some scientists think that many people have become fat because ....
- 5) In fast food restaurants there is ....
- Read the examples and say how we can form questions and negative sentences in past perfect.

A.

- 1) When Tom came to his office he was hungry. He hadn't had breakfast.
- 2) Jane was unhappy when she came back home. She hadn't written her test.
- 3) I didn't know what to do, Martin hadn't phoned me.

B.

- 1) Had Tom gone home when you came? Yes, he had.
- 2) Had Mary cleaned the floor by 7 o'clock? No, she hadn't.
- 3) Had you cooked lunch before granny got up? Yes, I had.
- Read the text "Prodigy Child" and find in it sentences in past perfect.

  Why are they used in this text?

**Prodigy Child** 

Kevin was a prodigy child. By the age of two he had learned to read and write. Before his fifth birthday his parents had taught him to speak French and German and he played the piano rather well. Kevin was a great lover of books and by the age of ten he had already read all the books in his father's library. When all his friends were still in the second form, he had already left school. After he had finished college, he went to University to become a microbiologist. At sixteen he was ready for his final exams



and soon became the youngest scientist in the history of his country. He was happy because he hadn't wasted his time and got a good profession that he loved. The only problem with Kevin was that he had never played football or basketball with his friends and had no idea of sports, games or children's parties: he hadn't had time for them.

### Focus

1. В предложениях с **after** и **before** вместо *past perfect* в английском языке часто употребляется *past simple*, так как слова *after* и *before* сами указывают на очередность действий. Ср.:

Sam had left before Ann got there.

Sam left before Ann got there.

After the guests had left, I went to bed.

After the guests left, I went to bed.

2. Past simple, а не past perfect употребляется в том случае, когда действия в прошлом происходили одно непосредственно за другим. Ср.:

Pete came home and helped his sister to cook dinner. Larry opened the door and his dog ran in.

- Choose the right item to complete the sentences.
  - 1) I was really surprised when I learned that Harry ....
  - a) became a champion
- b) had become a champion
- 2) When Tom went to medical school, he already ... a lot of books on anatomy.
- a) read

- b) had read
- 3) I  $\dots$  from school rather tired and decided to relax for half an hour in front of the television.
- a) came

- b) had come
- 4) The child didn't feel very well. I think he ... too much junk food.
- a) ate

- b) had eaten
- 5) By the beginning of the new year Paul ... our team and was playing for the school.
- a) joined

- b) had joined
- 6) I kept my word and ... hard during the rest of the school term.
- a) worked

- b) had worked
- 7) Father began to feel much better because he ... up smoking.
- a) gave

- b) had given
- 8) The garden looked terrible: the wind and the rain ... it badly.
- a) damaged

b) had damaged

Make up sentences about Andy with because. Use past perfect.

E x a m p l e: Andy was sick when he smoked a cigarette.

Andy was sick when he smoked a cigarette because he had never smoked before.

1) Andy decided to go to the disco.

2) Andy bought the new disc of his favourite singer.

3) Andy got very tired of roller-skating.

4) Andy didn't play baseball very well.

5) Andy bought a beautiful new jacket.

6) Andy went to bed early yesterday.

7) Andy fell off the horse.

8) Andy was afraid to drive.

9) Andy wanted to watch "Lord of the Rings" on television.

10) Andy began to learn Italian.

11) Andy went to a Japanese restaurant.

12) Andy didn't know how to grow roses.

62), and repeat.

medicine ['medsən] — 1) медицина; 2) лекарство lose [lu:z] — терять weight [weit] — вес weigh [weit] — весить still [stil] — еще, все еще habit ['hæbit] — привычка jog [фрд] — бегать трусцой hardly ['hɑ:dli] — едва

14.

to get a cold to catch a cold to come down with a cold to have a cold — быть простуженным to do one's best — постараться изо всех сил

medicine: 1) to study medicine. Sandra studied medicine for five years before she became a doctor. 2) to take medicines, a medicine for sth. Penicillin is a medicine. What medicine do you take for a high temperature?

lose (lost, lost): to lose keys, to lose money. Mike lost his job last year. I can't find my address book anywhere. I think I have lost it. weight: the weight of a suitcase, in weight, to lose weight, to put on weight. The box was about 12 kilos in weight. Have you lost weight? Susan has put on weight since the summer.

weigh: to weigh much, to weigh little. The baby weighs three kilos. The shop girl weighed the tomatoes for me.

still: I'm still busy. Johnny still goes to school. It is still raining. habit: a good habit, a terrible habit, to give up a habit. My sister has healthy eating habits. My elder brother has some very bad habits. He sometimes smokes in bed and doesn't wash up after his meals.

jog (jogged, jogged): to jog in the morning, to go jogging. When people jog, they run slowly usually for exercise or pleasure. I go jogging every morning.

hardly: Boris can hardly speak English. There was hardly any wind. Bob has hardly eaten anything. Hardly ever: He hardly ever does anything interesting.

catch (get/have) a cold: When you catch a cold, doctors usually tell you to stay in bed. Joanna has a bad cold and doesn't go to school.

come down with a cold: What's the matter? — I think I'm coming down with a cold.

do one's best: I don't know if I can do it but I'll do my best. Nick says he will do his best to keep his word.

# =

### Focus

В 1999 году в Британии закончился официальный переход на метрическую систему измерения веса и расстояния. Английские школьники, как и российские, учат в школе, что километр состоит из тысячи метров, а в килограмме — тысяча граммов. Однако все жители Британии хорошо помнят старую систему измерений и продолжают ею пользоваться. Так, на рынках и в магазинах вам взвешивают продукты в фунтах, объем напитков исчисляется в пинтах, а расстояние — в милях. Для многих людей, особенно старшего поколения, это гораздо более привычно. То же положение дел характерно и для США.

#### Length

1 inch = 2.54 cm 1 foot = 0.3048 m 1 yard = 3 feet = 0.9144 m

1 mile = 1.609 km

### Liquids

1 pint [paint] =  $0.4732 \text{ dm}^3$ 1 gallon =  $3.7853 \text{ dm}^3$ 

### Weight

1 ounce [auns]/oz/ = 28.35 g 1 pound /lb/ = 0.454 kg 1 stone = 14 pounds = 6.35 kg

Обрати внимание, что на письме англичане отделяют десятичные дроби от целого числа точкой, а не запятой, как принято у нас. Сравни:

Russian style: 27.58

English style: 27.58 [,twenti 'sevən point 'fifti eit]

## Answer the questions using the new words.

1) What makes jogging such a popular exercise? 2) What good and bad habits have you got? 3) How often do you catch colds and what do you do when you have them? 4) What are some of the things you can hardly do? 5) Learning which school subjects do you do your best? 6) How much do you weigh? And what is your weight in stones? (This is the way the English measure1 their weight.) 7) Do you put on and lose weight easily? What do you do to lose weight? 8) Some medicines can help you to lose weight. Do you think such medicines do good or harm to your body?

### 8 Say: a) which of these you can hardly do; b) which of these you hardly ever do.

- play the piano

- jog in the morning

- ride a bike

- take photos

- work in the garden

B.

- come home late

swim in winter

- go to museums

- read books on ecology

- wear school uniform

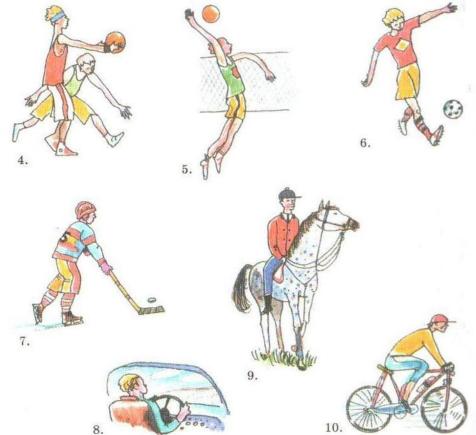
sing English songs

- go to the zoo









### Hard or hardly? They are very different!

1) I'm so tired, I can (hard/hardly) move. 2) Sofia (hard/hardly) speaks any Italian, she's never learned it. 3) The way home was long and (hard/hardly) and we returned only late at night. 4) The text is very (hard/hardly). I don't think I'll be able to read it. 5) Two more tests coming tomorrow! Isn't it a (hard/hardly) life? 6) Jack is not my friend, I (hard/hardly) know him. 7) It is raining so (hard/hardly) that soon our garden will be under water. 8) This is (hard/hardly) the time for buying new clothes: we have very little money just enough to buy food. 9) It's (hard/hardly) to understand Nina when she speaks English fast. 10) This is a very (hard/hardly) question, I don't know how to answer it.

<sup>1</sup> to measure ['meʒə] — измерять

10 A. Read the interviews and say what Andrew and Sarah do right and what they do wrong.

# Two Interviews Interview 1

Interviewer: Do you think you're a healthy person?

Andrew: Yes, I get a cold one or two times a year and that's all. And I hardly take any medicines.

Interviewer: And do you think that's because of what you eat and the exercise you take?

Andrew: Maybe. I try to eat healthy food — fruit, vegetables and lots of salad. I do my best not to overeat and seldom eat sweets or cakes or just junk food.

Interviewer: What about smoking? Do you smoke?

Andrew: No, I've never smoked at all. Interviewer: Do you drink alcohol?

Andrew: Yes, but only wine<sup>1</sup>. Sometimes I have it with my meals.

Interviewer: And do you take much exercise?

Andrew: I'm afraid not enough. In summer I ride a bicycle<sup>2</sup> and in winter I try to do some swimming once a week but I feel that's not enough. I'm beginning to put on weight.

### Interview 2

Interviewer: Sarah, you look fine and healthy. Do you think you're a healthy person?

Sarah: Well, I feel healthy. I'm not too bad.

Interviewer: And what about smoking? Do you smoke?

Sarah: Yes, I still do. Not too much, two or three cigarettes a day. I know it's a bad habit. I tried to give it up but found it too hard.

Interviewer: Do you keep to any diet?

Sarah: Not really because I enjoy my food too much. I like fried<sup>3</sup> food and sweet things. It's difficult to say that my diet is healthy.

Interviewer: And what about exercise? Do you jog or play tennis or anything?

Sarah: No, I'm afraid I don't. I try to walk to work and other places. So that's the only exercise I take.

B. Listen to the tape, (63), and read the text again after it.

A. Act out one of the interviews (ex. 10).

B. Interview one of your classmates. Ask him or her what they do to keep fit.



### Focus

Русское слово «еще» может передаваться на английский язык двумя словами: **still**, **yet**. При этом *still* означает «все еще», а *yet* — «еще не» и употребляется в конце отрицательных предложений.

It is *still* early. — Еще рано. (Все еще...) Не hasn't come *yet*. — Он еще не пришел. (Еще не...)

### 5till or yet? Which word to choose?

1) I haven't finished the book .... 2) John is ... sick. He doesn't go to school. 3) I ... don't understand you. Why haven't you come on time? 4) I came into the room and saw they were ... having tea. 5) I came into the room and saw that they hadn't finished having tea .... 6) Where is Steve? — He is ... jogging, I think. 7) Sharon has put on weight but she ... eats too many sweets. 8) I can't go with you because I'm ... busy. 9) Harris hasn't left ..., he's ... in the office. 10) Helen hasn't taken her medicine ....

### Do It on Your Own

# Complete the text. Use past simple or past perfect.

Yesterday I (meet) \_\_(1)\_ Betty at the bus stop. I (can) \_\_(2)\_ hardly believe my eyes. Betty (change) \_\_(3)\_ a lot. She (lose) \_\_(4)\_ weight. She (become) \_\_(5)\_ very slim. In fact, she (look) \_\_(6)\_ young and beautiful.

### Make up one sentence out of two. Use after or before.

1) I took the medicine. I felt a little better. 2) Jane came to the party (at 6). Nick left (at 5:30). 3) The film began (at 7). We got to the cinema (at 7:15). 4) I told my parents everything. I felt much better. 5) I learnt it by heart. I found a new poem. 6) I read one of the "Harry Potter" books. I saw the film.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> wine — вино <sup>2</sup> a bicycle = bike

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> fried [fraid] — жареный

# Step Three

# Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the dialogue, (64), and say if the facts are true, false or there is no information about them in the text.
  - 1) Jane hasn't seen Alice for 5 years.
  - 2) Alice has put on weight.
  - 3) Jane keeps to a diet.
  - 4) Alice doesn't take a lot of exercise.
  - 5) Alice jogs in the evening.
  - 6) Alice doesn't have much free time.
  - 7) Alice rides a bike very well.
  - 8) Jane likes sweets very much.
- Match up the parts of sentences in the two columns. Compare your results.
  - 1) When he had painted the door,
  - 2) After Larry had washed the car.
  - 3) When Rose had given up smoking,
  - 4) Tommy had come to school
  - 5) Eric didn't come to the meeting
  - 6) By the time mother returned
  - 7) After Greg had finished his homework,

- a) he went to play football.
- b) she began looking much better.
- c) Terry had washed all the plates.
- d) it looked as good as new.
- e) before the lesson started.
- f) because Fred hadn't phoned him.
- g) he drove to the city centre.
- Complete the texts. Use past simple or past perfect of the verbs in brackets.

When we came home from grandma's yesterday, our room was in a terrible mess. We (leave) \_(1) the window open and the wind (break) (2) the vase. There (be) (3) a lot of small pieces of glass on the carpet and the carpet itself (be) (4) wet.

2. Past perfect часто используется в косвенной речи после глаголов said,

She asked if John had read the book.

told, asked, thought, explained, wondered2.

I said I had never been to India.

After we (paint) (1) the door we (not, put) (2) the boxes with paint where they belonged. We (be) (3) in a hurry as we (have) (4) to meet our friends at the airport at seven p.m. When we (return) (5) home, we (see) (6) that something terrible (happen) (7) Our dog Rex (become) (8) yellow in many parts of his body. He definitely (lie) (9) on the sofa or maybe (sleep) (10) on it, as there (be) (11) yellow marks all over. I (put) (12) my new white blouse on the armchair before we (leave) (13). I (not, have) (14) a fashionable blouse any more. Rex (touch) (15) it too.

1. Обрати внимание на то, как происходит перевод прямой речи (direct speech) в косвенную (reported speech), если глагол, который вводит прямую речь, употребляется в past simple.

(1) John said: "I live in New York." John said (that) he lived in New York. Bob said: "I can't swim." Bob said he couldn't swim.

(2) Bob said: "I am learning French." Bob said he was learning French. We said to Tom: "We are leaving soon."

We told Tom we were leaving soon.

(3) Ann said: "Jack went home." Ann said Jack had gone home.

Ann said to Helen: "I bought a good book." Ann told Helen she had bought a good book.

(4) Fred said: "I have done it." Fred explained he had done it. Jill said to Ann: "You have made a mistake." Jill explained to Ann that she had made a mistake.

Present Simple Past Simple

Present Progressive Past Progressive

Past Simple Past Perfect

Present Perfect Past Perfect

<sup>1</sup> a piece [pi:s] — кусочек

<sup>1</sup> to explain [ik'splein] — объяснять 2 to wonder ['wandə] — интересоваться

I told them I hadn't met Andrew before.

She wondered who had left the door open.

We thought the Browns had bought a new cottage.

They explained that they had lost their keys.

## Report what they said. Use the verbs tell, explain.

- 1) Frank said to Val: "I go jogging every morning."
- 2) Mary said to Victor: "Don has caught a cold."
- 3) David said to John: "I'm doing my best to learn it by heart."
- 4) Robert said to Polly: "It was interesting."
- 5) Alice said to Betty: "I have put on weight."
- 6) Harry said to Lena: "We have bought a new disc."
- 7) Lizzy said to Kevin: "I had a high temperature."
- 8) Sarah said to Kevin: "I don't know anything."
- 9) Rose said to Brian: "We are keeping a healthy diet."
- 10) Kate said to Ann: "I can keep your secret."

# =

### Focus

Если глагол, который вводит прямую речь, стоит в *past simple*, при переводе прямой речи в косвенную следует помнить о том, что необходимо производить определенные лексические изменения.

here → there

this → that

today → that day

ago → before

now → then

these → those

yesterday → the day before

last night (week, year) → the previous [pri:viəs] night (week, year)

### Report what John said. Use the verbs ask, wonder, tell, explain.

E x a m p l e: "How long have you been here, Paul?"

John wondered how long Paul had been there.

- 1) I am going to the cinema this afternoon.
- 2) These days we usually have lunch in the nearby café.

- 3) Jimmy has come to London today.
- 4) We had a conference on ecology yesterday.
- 5) I always stay here when I am in Glasgow.
- 6) Last week I gave up smoking.
- 7) Where did aunt Polly go last night?
- 8) Why is Sarah keeping to a diet now?
- 9) What club did Larry join three days ago?
- 10) Where were his friends last month?



Mrs Loveday wants to know what these people said. But she can't hear very well. Help her and report their words.

E x a m p l e: B o b: It is dangerous to live here.

Bob explained it was dangerous to live there.



- 1) Diana: Jane is relaxing now. She is having a holiday on the coast.
- 2) Frank: The population of the city is growing.
- 3) Mrs Crawford: We have done a lot today.
- 4) Steve: I kept a diary three years ago.
- 5) Ms Evans: These medicines are well-known.
- 6) Barbara: I bought a new badge yesterday.
- 7) Mary: I worked at the factory last year.

# 🚺 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, 🌉 (65), and repeat.

4

ache [eik] — ноющая, тупая боль, обычно не очень сильная sneeze [sni:z] — чихать cough [kɒf] — кашлять pain [pein] — боль painful ['peinfəl] — причиняющий боль, болезненный hurt [h3:t] — 1) ушибить, повредить; 2) причинить боль

swallow ['swvləv] — глотать examine [ɪg'zæmɪn] — осматривать prescribe [pп'skraib] — прописывать prescription [pп'skripfən] — рецепт cure [kjvə] — вылечить complication [,kvmpli'keɪfən] — осложнение

B.

ache: a headache, (a) backache, (a) stomachache<sup>1</sup>. Tanya is ill, she has a high temperature and a headache.

sneeze: to sneeze badly. There was a lot of pepper in the salad and Mike began sneezing.

cough: to cough badly. Sarah is coughing badly because she has a cold. To have a bad cough. James has been ill for a week but he still has a bad cough. Laura gave a little cough and began speaking.

pain: a lot of pain, to give sb a lot of pain, to have a pain in the leg. John was having terrible pains in his left side.

painful: a painful operation, painful words. It was painful to look at the sick child.

hurt (hurt, hurt): 1) to hurt badly. I hurt my hand when I fell down. Jack hurt his foot playing football. I've hurt my toe. 2) My leg hurts. Where does it hurt, Mr Jones? — Just here, doctor. Is that shoe hurting you? — It hurts to walk.

swallow: Tim swallowed and answered the question. Irene had a cold and it hurt her to swallow.

prescribe: to prescribe some medicines for an earache. Doctor, will you prescribe something for my headache? Alice's doctor prescribed her some antibiotics [,æntibar'ptiks].

**prescription:** a prescription for some medicine, to write out a prescription. The doctor has written out a prescription for antibiotics. This prescription is for my headaches.

examine: to examine a suitcase, to examine a patient. My doctor examined my throat and prescribed a medicine for my cough. After examining the patient, Dr Harris wrote out a prescription.

cure: to cure a patient, to cure somebody of something. The old lady says nothing can cure her of her headaches. Unfortunately there is no medicine to cure diabetes [,darə'bi:ti:z].

complications: to develop complications, to have complications. Viruses ['vaiərəsis] can be dangerous because of the complications. Some people develop complications after a cold.

## Answer the questions using the new words.

- 1) How often do you catch colds? What do you feel when you have a cold? Do you have a headache, an earache or a pain in the stomach? Does it hurt to swallow? Do you usually sneeze or cough when you have a cold? What about your temperature? Is it usually high?
- 2) Do your parents always call a doctor when you have a cold or catch a virus? What do doctors do when they come to see you? What questions do they usually ask you? What do doctors usually prescribe for your cold or virus? Do they always prescribe some medicine or just ask you to stay in bed and drink warm milk? How long does it usually take to cure a cold?

### $\equiv$

### Focus

Прилагательные **ill** и **sick** могут характеризовать людей, которые нездоровы.

The boy is ill/sick.

The children are ill/sick.

Однако только одно из них — прилагательное sick — в этом значении может употребляться как определение.

#### Сравни:

The sick boy had a very high temperature.

How long has he been ill/sick?

What medicine do sick people take for their colds?

I didn't know that your brother was sick/ill.

¹ a stomachache ['stʌməkeɪk] — боль в животе

A. Read the dialogue and choose the right item in the sentences after it.

Dr Gordon: Come in and sit down, Paul. What's the matter with you? You don't look your best today.

Paul: I've got a bad headache, doctor. I've been feeling bad since yesterday night.

Dr Gordon: Have you taken your temperature?

Paul: No, I haven't. I never have a temperature.

Dr Gordon: Never say never, my boy. Let's take it now. Here is a thermometer. Please tell me more. Are you sneezing or coughing? Is your nose running? Is there any pain in your chest?

Paul: No, doctor, I don't think so. I just have this headache and it hurts me to swallow, just a little.

Dr Gordon: Will you open your mouth wide? I'd like to see your throat. I think you're coming down with a cold, Paul, or maybe you've caught a virus.

Paul: A virus? My younger sister has been in bed all week with a virus.

Dr Gordon: Then it's very likely that you've got it too. Let's look at your temperature. Tut-tut. What did I tell you? Never say never. Your temperature is 37.8. I'll write out a prescription. Ask one of your parents to take it to the chemist's. You need this medicine to bring down the temperature and fight the virus.

Paul: What else shall I do, doctor?

Dr Gordon: Stay in bed, drink a lot of warm tea or milk, take the medicine I've prescribed and something for your headache. I'll call tomorrow afternoon and examine you again. Viruses take about a week to cure and may be dangerous because of their complications.

Paul: Thank you for your time, Doctor.

Dr Gordon: Get well, Paul. I'll see you tomorrow.



- 1) Paul comes to see Doctor Gordon because he has ....
  a) a headache
  b) a temperature

  2) Paul has just ....
  a) one problem
  b) two problems

  3) The doctor examines Paul's ....
  a) nose
  b) throat

  4) The doctor gives Paul a ....
  a) medicine
  b) prescription for a medicine

  5) The doctor is ....
  a) going to visit Paul soon
  b) asking Paul to come to his office again
  - B. Listen to the tape, [66], and read the dialogue again after it.
  - C. Act out the dialogue.
- Make up these dialogues.
  - a) mother and daughter / son
  - · have a problem
  - · call the doctor
  - · have a pain in my /your/ chest
  - · cough
  - take /my/ your temperature
  - · go to the chemist's
  - · buy a medicine for your /my/ cough
  - b) doctor and patient
  - · hurt to walk
  - · fall down while playing basketball
  - examine the leg
  - · stay at home
  - · write out a prescription
  - · rub the medicine in
  - c) two pupils (on the telephone)
  - · stay home from school
  - · stay in bed
  - · have a temperature
  - · come down with a cold
  - · cough and sneeze
  - · take a lot of medicines
  - · get better

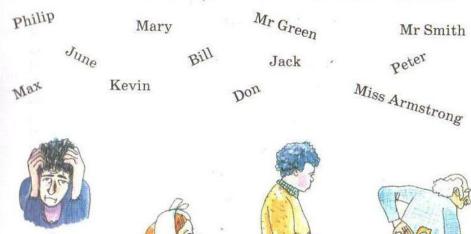
# Do It on Your Own

- 11 Complete the sentences.
  - 1) What do you usually take ... your headache?
  - 2) Wait a second. I want to write ... two or three prescriptions for you.
  - 3) What's the matter? I'm afraid I'm coming down ... a cold.
  - 4) I hope this medicine will be able to bring ... your temperature.
  - 5) What do doctors usually prescribe ... earache?
  - 6) Cough sweets can cure you ... a painfully sore throat.
  - 7) What's this prescription ...? My painful coughing.
  - 8) I have a bad pain ... my chest. What shall I do?
- 12 Write a short story about how you came down with a cold.

# Step Four

# Do It Together

1 Listen to the tape, 📖 (67), and match the names with the pictures.





- Paraphrase these
  - 1) to have a pain in the back
  - 2) to have a pain in the stomach
  - 3) to have a pain in the ear
  - 4) to have a pain in the head
  - 5) to have a pain in the tooth
- How do you know that you are coming down with a cold? What do you usually do to get better?
- Yesterday Richard felt he was coming down with a cold. He went to see his doctor. Read the dialogue and then report the doctor's questions and Richard's answers. Use the verbs to ask, to explain, to say, to tell, to think, to wonder.

Doctor: Next, please. Ah, good morning, Richard. What can I do for you today? Richard: Well, doctor, I have a running nose and it hurts to swallow.

Doctor: I see. And your cough sounds bad. How long have you had it? When did you begin coughing like that?

Richard: Sorry, I don't remember, doctor.



Doctor: All right. Let me take your temperature first. Oh, you're running a temperature, Richard. I think you have got a virus.

Richard: What can I take to bring down the temperature, doctor?

Doctor: Well, I am going to prescribe some medicine for your temperature. Take this medicine three times a day after meals<sup>1</sup>.

Richard: Thank you, doctor. Goodbye.

Doctor: Goodbye, Richard. Next, please.



### **Focus**

Обрати внимание на изменения, которые происходят в глагольных формах при переводе предложений из прямой речи в косвенную, если глагол, который вводит прямую речь, стоит в *past simple*.

Kevin said: "I have been coughing for a week." Kevin explained he had been coughing for a week.

Alice asked Bob: "How long have you been taking this medicine?"

Alice wondered how long Bob had been taking that medicine.

Alice asked Bob how long he had been taking that medicine.

present perfect progressive past perfect progressive

present perfect progressive

past perfect progressive

A lot of patients<sup>2</sup> came to see Dr Morrison last Friday. They all had had some problems for some time. Report what Dr Morrison said about his patients' problems. Use the verbs to explain, to think.

Dr Morrison said: "John has been sneezing for two days."

Dr Morrison said John had been sneezing for two days.

1) Dr Morrison said: "Jane has been coughing for a week."

2) Dr Morrison said: "Alice has been taking aspirin for three days."

3) Dr Morrison said: "Bob's leg has been hurting him for a month."

4) Dr Morrison said: "Mrs Gatewood has been putting on weight for a year."

5) Dr Morrison said: "Mr Williams has been overworking himself for a long time."

6) Dr Morrison said: "Ms Sandfrod has been trying to give up smoking for four months."

### 6 Say what questions Dr Morrison asked his patients.

E x a m p l e: Dr Morrison wanted to know if his patient was coughing.

— Are you coughing?

1) Dr Morrison wondered how long his patient had been coughing.

2) Dr Morrison asked if his patient often had headaches.

3) Dr Morrison wanted to know if his patient was feeling worse.

4) Dr Morrison wondered if his patient had had any pain in that side before.

5) Dr Morrison asked how long his patient had been keeping to a diet of vegetables and fruit.

6) Dr Morrison asked why his patient hadn't come to see him earlier.

7) Dr Morrison wanted to know how long his patient had been overworking himself.

8) Dr Morrison asked what medicines his patient had been taking.

9) Dr Morrison wondered who had prescribed those medicines.

10) Dr Morrison wondered if the medicines were helping.

# Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [58], and repeat.

A.

разtime ['pɑ:staɪm] — времяпровождение team [ti:m] — команда support [sə'pɔ:t] — 1) v поддерживать; 2) n поддержка race [reɪs] — 1) n гонка, бег на скорость; 2) v участвовать в гонке, в состязании на скорость, бегать наперегонки climb [klaɪm] — 1) v лазить, подниматься; 2) n подъем, восхождение advantage [əd'va:ntid;] — пре-имущество thrill [ $\theta$ ril] — 1) n дрожь, трепет, восторг; 2) v заставить трепетать excitement [ik'saitmənt] — возбуждение, волнение score [skx:] — 1) v выиграть (очко), забить (гол); 2) n счет (в игре)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> after meals [mi:lz] — после еды

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> a patient ['peifənt] — пациент

pastime: an unusual pastime, Mary's favourite pastime. We played word games in the car as a pastime during the long drive. team: a football team, a popular team, a famous team. A football

match is between two teams of players.

support: 1) to support the government, to support each other, to support the family. Mr Donovan has to support a large family. Do many people support that candidate? Which football team do you support? 2) to show support, to give support. My friends gave me real support during the difficult times.

race: 1) an important race, a difficult race, famous motor races (horse races). Our horse won the race. 2) to race someone. The two children raced each other to school. Will you race me to that tree? climb: 1) to climb the mountains, to climb the hills. The boys climbed the tree and fell down. 2) A long climb up the mountain. The trip includes a climb up the volcano.

advantage: an advantage, to give an advantage, to have an advantage over sb, to get an advantage. The home team always have an advantage over their opponents. Quick thinking is an advantage

in many professions.

thrill: a great thrill, a pleasant thrill; to give (get) a thrill. Seeing the ocean for the first time gave me a great thrill. It was a thrill to see the famous runner in person.

**excitement:** real excitement, great excitement. We could hardly sleep because of our excitement about starting the trip tomorrow. There was great excitement when the teacher told us about the coming trip.

score: 1) to score a point (some points), to score a goal (some goals). I scored twenty points in the game. Who scored the goal? 2) The final score. What's the score? The final score was 5 to 4.

### 8 Match the items in the two columns.

- 1) what you like to do when you are not working
  2) a group of people who play sports together on one side
  3) to move up, down or conservable in the second of the second o
- 3) to move up, down or across sth using hands and feet
- 4) to help
- 5) to run to find out who is (the) fastest

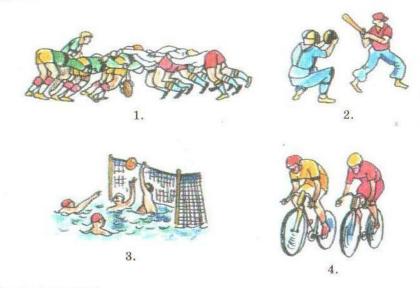
- a) climb
- b) support
- c) race
- d) team
- e) pastime

- A. Read the text and decide which of these titles is the best for it.
  - a) Sport and People
  - b) Popular Sports
  - c) Sport and Health

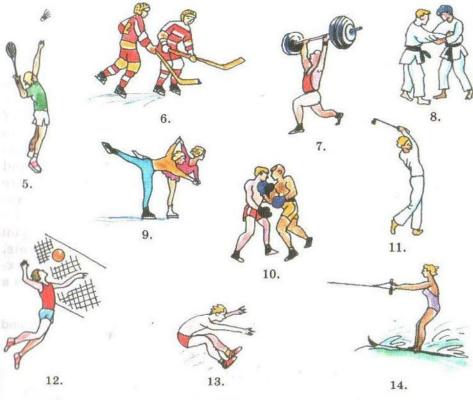
Sport is one of the most popular pastimes all over the world. Lots of people watch sports programmes on television, support their teams at stadiums ['steɪdiəmz] and go in for different kinds of sport. Some sports are common, others are not. It is difficult to find a person who has not heard about such team games as football or basketball or such athletics [æ $\theta$ 'letiks] as running and jumping. At the same time there are sports and games that are less common, for example motor races, rock climbing and parachute ['pærəʃuːt] jumping are not to everyone's taste¹.

Going in for sport gives you a lot of advantages. It gives you physical ['fizikəl] exercise, you spend a lot of time in the open air, you meet people who enjoy the same sport. Just think of the excitement of the moment when your favourite footballer scores a goal at the last moment of the match.

B. Look at the pictures and match them with the names of sports and games.



<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> are not to everyone's taste = not everybody likes them



### sports

- a) boxing
- b) cycling
- c) long jumping
- d) figure skating
- e) weight lifting
- f) judo
- g) water skiing

### games

- h) golf
- i) baseball
- j) ice hockey
- k) volleyball
- 1) badminton
- m) water polo
- n) rugby

### C. Read the text again and say which of these facts are not in it.

- 1) Sport is an activity that most people know of and enjoy.
- 2) The most popular sports in England.
- 3) Some sports are more popular than others.
- 4) Sports that are more useful than others.
- 5) Why people go in for sport.
- 6) Some of the best-known athletes.



### **Focus**

Слово *sport* означает спортивную деятельность в самом широком смысле, в этом значении это существительное является неисчисляемым.

Do you like sport? Going in for sport is very good for children.

У слова *sport* есть и другое значение — «вид спорта». В этом значении оно исчисляемое.

Football is a popular sport. Basketball has always been one of school sports.

В функции определения перед существительным всегда используй форму *sports*: sports jacket, sports club, sports news.

## 10 In what sports do they use them?

- 1) balls: big balls, smaller balls
- 2) skates
- 3) rackets
- 4) racing cars
- 5) horses

### 11 Answer the questions.

- 1) What traditional Russian games do you know?
- 2) What sports and games are most popular in Russia now?
- 3) What sports are new or uncommon in this country?
- 4) What summer and winter sports do you know?
- 5) What sports would you enjoy most? Why?
- 6) What famous Russian and foreign athletes do you know? In what sports did they become famous?
- 7) What sports are the most dangerous and the least dangerous?
- 8) What water sports do you know?
- 9) What team games do teenagers<sup>1</sup> usually play in Russian schools?
- 10) Why is it necessary for teenagers to go in for sport?
- 11) Are there enough stadiums, gyms and swimming baths in the place where you live?
- 12) What can local and national governments do to make sport more popular?

<sup>1</sup> a teenager ['ti:neid;ə] — подросток

# Do It on Your Own

12 This is what Julia, a famous sportswoman said about herself in an interview. Report it to your friends.

Example: Julia said she had always liked sport.

I have always liked sport. I have been skating for about ten years now. I have won some medals and prizes. At this moment I am preparing for something very important. I am going to skate for my town. My friends and I hope to win again. We have been training for two months very hard. I think we are in good form.

13 Write these in English.

Иметь преимущество над своим другом, взбираться на гору, забить гол, выиграть очко, настоящее волнение, скачки, мое любимое времяпровождение, вызвать трепет (возбуждение), поддерживать друг друга, трудные гонки, бежать с Анной наперегонки, получить настоящую поддержку, трудное восхождение.

# Step Five

# Do It Together

Listen to the tape, (69), and say if the facts about Laila Ali are true, false or there is no information about them.



- 1) Muhammad Ali is a famous boxer.
- 2) He has 9 children.
- 3) He doesn't like the idea of women boxers.
- 4) People were very interested in Laila's first fight.
- 5) Muhammad Ali came to see his daughter's first fight.6) April Fowler was Laila's opponent during the first fight.
- 7) Laila's first fight lasted less than a minute.
- 8) Laila has a talent for boxing.

Z Listen to the song, (70), and sing along.

### We Shall Overcome<sup>1</sup>

We shall overcome, we shall overcome, We shall overcome some day.

Oh, deep in my heart2

I do believe

That we shall overcome some day.

We shall live in peace, we shall live in peace,

We shall live in peace some day.

Oh, deep in my heart

I do believe

That we shall overcome some day.

We'll walk hand in hand, we'll walk hand in hand,

We'll walk hand in hand some day.

Oh, deep in my heart

I do believe

That we shall overcome some day.



### **Focus**

При описании занятий различными видами спорта в английском языке часто используется структура **to do sth.**:

to do boxing

to do high jumping to do figure skating

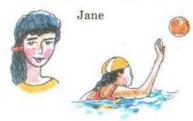
to do water skiing to do horse riding

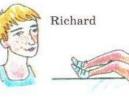
to do jumping to do long jumping

to do weightlifting

Say what it thrills the teenagers to do.

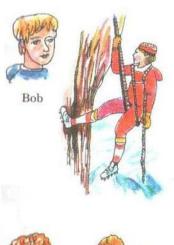
Example: It thrills Bob to do mountain climbing.



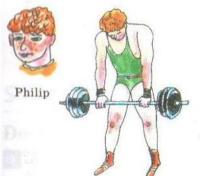


1 to overcome [,əʊvə'kʌm] — преодолеть, победить

<sup>2</sup> a heart [hɑ:t] — сердце

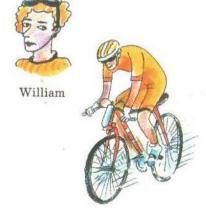












# Work with a partner. Ask and answer. Report what your partner has said.

 Do you take enough exercise? What exercise? How often do you go to the stadium? to the swimming bath?

 What is your favourite pastime? Have you ever tried to do mountain climbing? When was it? Do you like playing football? Are you a member of the school team? Do you support your school team when they play?

 Do you go in for sport? What sport? Does it thrill you to watch motor races? horse races? Do you know any favourite sports-

men or sportswomen?

 Do you think about your diet? Do you eat things that are good (bad) for you? Do you have enough sleep? Do you take a lot of medicine? Are you healthy? How often do you see your doctor?



### **Focus**

Обрати внимание, что при переводе предложений, содержащих future simple, из прямой речи в косвенную вспомогательные глаголы will и shall изменяются соответственно на would и should, если глагол в основном предложении употребляется в past simple.

John said: "I will have an advantage over Bob."
John said he would have an advantage over Bob.
We said: "We shall win the game."
We said we should win the game.
Alice said: "I shall race Pat to the tree."
Alice said she would race Pat to the tree.

future simple future-in-the-past future simple future-in-the-past future simple future-in-the past

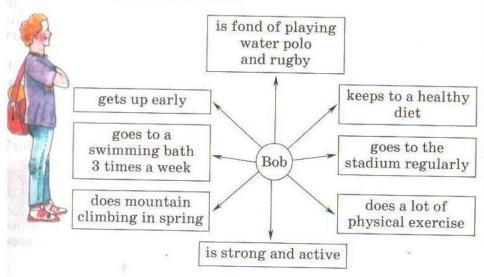
## 5 Report what they said. Use these verbs.

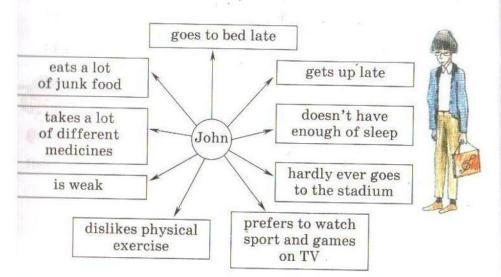
tell wonder think want (to know)

Jenny said: "I will play water polo next Sunday."
Peter said: "We shall support our team tomorrow."
John said: "I shall do a lot of physical exercise soon."
Val said: "I shall go to the stadium in the evening."
Robert asked: "Shall we go cycling on Saturday?"
Mr Cook asked: "Will they play rugby next week?"
Mrs Evans asked: "Where shall we meet?"
Miss Ford said: "Who will win the game?"
Ms Cox asked: "Who will play golf?"

6 Bob and John have different life styles1. Which of them do you think has an advantage and why?

Example: Bob has an advantage over John because Bob is strong and active and John is weak.





<sup>1</sup> life style [stail] — образ жизни

In column A there are some words you know. What do the words in column B mean?

- 1) History is an interesting science.
- 2) Sports like running, jumping are athletics.
- 3) I shall never forget my excitement when I first entered the Bolshoi Theatre.
- 4) The head is above the neck.

- B.
- write 1) Historians books about history.
- 2) Many athletes take part in the Olympic Games. My grandparents are very athletic, they love to swim and ice-skate.
- 3) The tickets to the zoo will excite the children. Paul was excited about his first trip in a plane. What exciting news!
- 4) Our best hockey player heads the school sport.
- B Learn some new words and word combinations. Listen to the tape, (71), and repeat.

ancient ['eɪn[ənt] — древний compete [kəm'pi:t] — соревноваться competition [,kpmpi'ti[an] соревнование performance [,pə'fɔ:məns] выступление, исполнение, представление event [i'vent] — событие, спортивное состязание war [wo:] — война peace [pi:s] — мир

to take part in — принимать **участие** в to take place - иметь место, происходить hero ['hɪərəʊ] — герой organize ['э:дэпагz] — организовывать noble ['nəubəl] — благородный field [fi:ld] — поле battle ['bætl] — сражение honour ['pnə] — честь

#### B.

ancient: ancient times, ancient Greece, an ancient city. There are ancient walls around the old city of York. compete: to compete in the race, to compete with/against each

other. The two sisters always compete with each other.

competition: an important competition, to win the competition. Our team was in competition with three others. I think I'll enter the swimming competition.

performance: an evening performance, an afternoon performance, the actor's performance. We all enjoyed last night's performance of the school play. His performance of/as Othello [ə'θeləʊ] was very good.

event: an important event. The first day at school is a big event in a child's life. The next event will be the high jump.

war: at war, to start a war, to go to war. In 1775 England was at war with her American colonies. They were a warlike nation.

peace: Peace on the planet is very important for all of us.

hero: to become a hero, a national hero. The winners of the Olympic Games are national heroes.

organize: to organize a meeting, to organize a trip. Our teacher has organized a class trip to Stratford-upon-Ayon.

organization: She is busy with the organization of her daughter's party. The letters UNO stand for the United Nations Organization.

noble: a noble person, a noble profession, a noble family, noble thoughts. Mr Patrik Morgan comes from a noble family.

field: a green field, in the field, on a football field. We could see a farmer in the field. The players have just come out onto the football field.

battle: to fight a battle, the Battle of Trafalgar. Battles happen during wars. The two armies fought a battle.

honour: a great honour, a big honour. He is a man of honour. It is a great honour to meet you.

take part in: Who will take part in the swimming competition? John hardly ever takes part in our meetings.

take place: The meeting took place on 17 March. What took place after the performance?



### **Focus**

Обрати внимание на употребление предлогов со словом field.

in the field — на поле on the football field — на футбольном поле on the battle field — на поле боя

- Use the new words and make the sentences complete.
  - 1) Our team will c... with the best athletes of the town. 2) Who will take p... in our concert? 3) All the people of Russia remember the b... of Stalingrad which took p... in 1943. 4) I have never seen any international boating c.... 5) Where shall we go after the p...? 6) The two countries have never been at w.... 7) Many people say that Pavel Bure is our national h.... 8) Andrei Dmitrievich Saharov was a man of h.... 9) We drove past large green f...s and could see bright yellow dandelions here and there. 10) What do you know about the B... of Trafalgar? about the B... of Waterloo? 11) Mahatma Gandi, the n... leader of the Indian people, is famous all over the world. 12) Have you read "W... and P..." by Leo Tolstoy? 13) The a... castle gave the city of Newcastle its name. 14) Greenpeace is a world-famous ecological o....
- The text "The Olympic Games" falls into two parts. Read the text and make up titles for these parts.











# The Olympic Games

a) ...

The Olympic Games are an international sports festival that began in ancient Greece. In those days Greek games took place every four years. They included not only sports competitions but also competitions in music, oratory1 and theatre performances. The earliest information about the Olympic Games goes back to 776 BC, but historians think that the Games began long before that. The ancient Olympics had only one athletic event — a footrace or a race for runners of about 183 metres (the length of the stadium). Only men could compete or



watch the Games. During the Games there was peace in the country. When the powerful, warlike2 Spartans began to compete, they changed the programme of the Games and included more sports in it. The winners of the Games became national heroes. The Roman emperor<sup>3</sup> Theodosius [θιο'dəʊsjəs] ended the Olympics in 394 AD because he thought that they were a pagan4 festival.

b) ...

In the 19<sup>th</sup> century the French nobleman Pierre de Coubertin ['pjer də 'kub3:tən] got the idea to bring the Olympic Games back to life. With the help of the people who supported him he organized the first modern Olympic Games in 1896. They were a success. Athletes from thirteen countries came to Greece to compete in nine sports. Russia took part in them, too. Now the number of countries taking part in the Olympic Games is much larger and so is the number of sports in which athletes compete. Like in ancient times, the Olympic Games take place every four years, yet in 1926 the tradition of the Winter Olympic Games also began. The noble idea of the Olympic Games is to make all people friends by com-

pagan ['peigən] — языческий

peting on football fields, courts and stadiums. The International Olympic Committee [kə'mɪti] (IOC) heads the Olympic movement. Among other things the Committee chooses the place for the coming Olympics. It is a great honour for a city to become an Olympic one.

The Olympic Games are probably the most important international sports event. Millions of people watch them, supporting their favourite teams and athletes. Many things have changed but like in ancient times winners of the Olympics become national heroes in their countries.

B. Listen to the tape, (72), and read the text again after it.

- 11 Read the text "The Olympic Games" again and make up questions to which these are answers.
  - 1) ...? In ancient Greece.
  - 2) ...? Every four years.
  - 3) ...? No. They also included competitions in music, oratory and theatre performances.
  - 4) ...? Only one. It was a footrace.
  - 5) ...? In 394 AD.
  - 6) ...? Because he believed that they were unchristian.
  - 7) ...? His name was Pierre de Coubertin.
  - 8) ...? Yes. He had some supporters.
  - 9) ...? In 1896.
  - 10) ...? In Greece.
  - 11) ...? The IOC.
  - 12) ...? They choose the city for the next Olympics.
- A. What were ancient Olympic Games like and what are modern Olympic Games like? Compare them.

Example: In ancient times only one country took part in the Olympic Games. Now a lot of countries do it.

- B. Do you know anything about the latest Olympic Games? Together with your classmates remember
- · in what city they took place and when
- · which of the countries won the most medals

oratory ['prətəri] — ораторское искусство

warlike = liking war

ап етрегог ['етрэгэ] — император

<sup>1</sup> latest ['leitist] — последние, недавние

- · what athletes were successful
- · how good was the Russian team
- · what competition or match you remember best and why



# Social English

13 A. Learn to make proposals and react to them.

### Making proposals

- · Let's watch the final match on TV.
- · What/How about playing a game of tennis?
- · I feel like jogging this morning, will you join me?
- · Why don't you play for the school team?
- · Why not take part in this race?

### Saying yes

- · I'd love to (do it).
- · I'd be glad to (do it).
- · I'd like that very much.
- · That sounds good.
- ·OK.
- · All right.
- · With pleasure ['ple39].

### Saying no

- · I'm afraid I can't.
- · I'd love to but I'm afraid I can't.
- · I'm sorry but I really can't.

# B. Work with a partner. Make a proposal. Say yes or no.

### Your idea is that

- · he/she should spend a quiet evening at home
- · you both should play a game of chess
- · he/she should start doing some physical exercise
- · he/she should learn to play baseball
- · you both should watch the hockey match on TV
- · he/she should join the school athletic club
- $\cdot$  he/she should take part in the 100 meter race
- · he/she should take pictures of the skiing competition
- · you both should try to keep fit

## Do It on Your Own

Use prepositions where necessary.

1) Richard has an advantage ... his friends, he goes ... the stadium regularly. 2) Everyone knows that it's very hard to climb ... Everest. 3) I am afraid that ice hockey is not quite ... my taste. 4) You say you are a good runner. Race me ... the school building and we shall see. 5) How many countries took part ... the latest Olympic Games? 6) The boy who has won ... the 100 meter race is my best friend. 7) I can see two cows ... the field. 8) Look! The two teams are already ... the football field. They have just come out ... it. 9) The Battle ... Waterloo took place in 1815 near Brussels, Belgium. 10) We are competing ... our neighbours, school 1220, in basketball.

213

Sten Five



# **Our Favourite Pastimes**

# Step One

# Do It Together

1 Listen to the tape, (73), and put the right names into these sentences.



## Their Free Time

- 1) ... does maths after school.
- 2) ... has very little free time because there are two young children in the house.
- 3) ... meets friends at weekends.
- 4) ... does a lot of sport.
- 5) ... likes to spend free time with friends.
- 6) ... travels about the country at weekends.

### How would you answer these questions about your free time?

### You and Your Free Time

- 1) How much free time do you have?
  - a) more than 3 hours a day
  - b) between 1 and 3 hours a day
  - c) less than 1 hour a day
- 2) Do you budget¹ your free time?
  - a) ves
- b) no
- c) sometimes
- 3) In what way do you prefer to spend your free time?
- a) stay indoors and relax
- f) do sport
- b) watch TV and video films
- g) spend it on self-education

c) read books

- h) spend it on your family
- d) meet your friends
- i) spend it some other way

- e) travel
- 4) What is your usual pastime or pastimes?
- 5) Are you happy about the way you spend your free time?
  - a) yes
- b) no
- c) not always
- 6) What would you like to change?



# The Passive Voice<sup>2</sup>

Все уже известные тебе глагольные формы были использованы в так называемом активном залоге (the active voice), когда глагол показывает, что действие выполняется лицом или предметом, выраженным подлежа-

Richard broke the window yesterday. Susan wrote the project last Sunday.

Однако, когда говорящий либо не знает, кто совершает действие, либо не придает этому значения, в предложении обычно используется страдательный залог (the passive voice). В английском языке страдательный залог образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола to be и третьей формы основного глагола.

<sup>1</sup> to budget ['bʌdʒit] — распределять

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> the passive voice — страдательный залог

Для прошедшего времени это:

was/were translated = был/были переведены

was/were played = был/были сыграны

was/were shown = был/были показаны

was/were read = был/были прочитаны

Если же возникает необходимость назвать лицо, которое совершает действие, пользуются предлогом by.

The book was written by Joanne Rowling.

Обрати внимание, что одно и то же предложение в страдательном залоге может переводиться на русский язык по-разному.

The letter was sent last evening.

1) Письмо было отослано вчера вечером. 2) Письмо отослали вчера вечером.

### Translate these sentences into Russian.

1) The castle was built in the 17<sup>th</sup> century. 2) The books were brought from the library. 3) The lunch was eaten in no time. 4) These cameras were made in Japan. 5) The English language was spoken only in England in the 16<sup>th</sup> century. 6) The living room was cleaned an hour ago. 7) Two bottles of mineral water were drunk because it was very hot. 8) The vegetables were brought in the morning. 9) The boy was asked to come back at 9 p.m. 10) The work was done at once. 11) America was discovered in 1492.

### 4 Change the sentences in the active voice into passive.

E x a m p l e: The team played the match very well.

The match was played very well (by the team).

1) John found a small silver box in the garden. 2) Mr Morrison hung the picture on the wall. 3) Jason learnt the poem by heart. 4) Our school football team won the final match with the score 5:2. 5) The girls did the exercises after class. 6) Barbara took these pictures while travelling in Africa. 7) Jane chose the blue dress because it was longer. 8) Mr Harrison built the cottage at the beginning of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. 9) Alice cut the cake into small pieces. 10) Mrs Biggs kept the old letters in a small green box.

- 5 Look at the sentences and say how negations and questions are made in the passive voice.
  - The floor was not cleaned last night.
    The cars were not washed in the evening.
  - ? Was the book bought last weekend? Were the churches built last century?
  - Wh? When were the apples bought? Where was the car made? Why were the letters burnt?

# Disagree<sup>1</sup> with the statements. Correct them using the passive voice.

E x a m p l e: The teacher collected the projects. | not the teacher, the students

— No, he didn't. The projects were not collected by the teacher, they were collected by the students.

- 1) Professor Jackson informed everybody about the lecture.
- 2) John broke their mother's favourite vase.
- 3) Little Sarah built a small sandcastle on the beach.
- 4) Emma painted the door yellow.
- 5) Tourists killed a lot of dodos.
- 6) Marion took two eggs from the fridge.
- 7) Henry scored the last goal in the game.
- 8) Mr Jason preferred Plan A to Plan B.
- 9) Miss Harper included Tom on the list.

not Professor Jackson, Professor Davidson not John, Florence

not Sarah, little Alice

not Emma, her little brother Steve

not tourists, sailors not Marion, Sharon

not Henry, Max

not Plan A, Plan B

not Tom, Boris

217

Step One

<sup>1</sup> to disagree [,disə'gri:] — не соглашаться, возражать

# 7 Ask questions to get more information about these facts. Give answers.

Example: Kevin's plan was supported.

When was his plan supported?
Where was his plan supported?
By whom was the plan supported?
Why was the plan supported?

Last week.

At the Congress.

By everyone.

It was really good.

- 1) The poem was written.
- 2) The sandcastle was built.
- 3) The story was told.
- 4) The new land was discovered.
- 5) Some species of animals were killed.
- 6) A lot of historic facts were remembered.
- 7) The trees were cut down.
- 8) A lot of power stations were built.
- 9) Some rivers were polluted.
- 10) Some money was collected.

# 8 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

You want to know

- 1) when America was discovered
  - a) 1392
- b) 1492

- c) 1429
- 2) on what continents rainforests were mostly destroyed
  - a) Europeb) Australia
- c) North America d) South America
- e) Asia
- 3) when "Eugene Onegin" was written
  - a) 1823—1831
- b) 1832—1837
- c) 1810-1819

- 4) when Moscow was founded1
  - a) 1047
- b) 1147

- c) 1417
- 5) when the electron was discovered
  - a) 1807
- b) 1877

- c) 1897
- 6) when the second World War was finished
  - a) 1945
- b) 1948

- c) 1946
- 7) by whom "Robinson Crusoe" was written
  - a) Daniel Defo
- b) Jonathan Swift
- c) Rudyard Kipling

- 8) when the first clock was made
  - a) in the early Middle Ages
  - b) in the late Middle Ages
  - c) in ancient times
- 9) where the Eiffel Tower was built
  - a) Dijon
- b) Lion

- c) Paris
- 10) by whom "The Mona Lisa" was painted
  - a) Michelangelo [,markəl'ændələv]
  - b) Leonardo da Vinci [,li:ə'na:dəv də'vıntʃi]
  - c) Raffaello Santi ['ræferəlɔ:,sænti]
- 11) when "The Mona Lisa" was painted
  - a) 1603
- b) 1403

- c) 1503
- 12) when the first plane was flown by the Wright brothers
  - a) 1903
- b) 1913

- c) 1923
- Listen to the tape, (74), and read what these people say about their interests. Whose interests do you share¹?

Hi! I'm Nina. I go to school in St. Petersburg. My school is not usual. We study a lot of chemistry and biology. Biology is my favourite subject. I have always been interested in wildlife. After school I spend most of my time in the club. We call ourselves "Young Biologists". We meet two times a week to discuss some interesting problems. During school holidays we go to different places where we can watch wildlife and study their ecology. I keep some pets at home too. I like playing with them and looking after<sup>2</sup> them.

I'm Mark. I live in Liverpool, England. My hobby is music. We have the Beatles Museum in Liverpool which I have visited many times. I have a big collection of books about the musicians and a lot of their recordings<sup>3</sup>. I think there is nothing that I don't know about the group. Of





to found [faund] — основывать

to share [ʃeə] — разделять
 to look after — заботиться

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> a recording — запись

Hi there! I'm Andy Scott. I come from Sacramento, California, USA. I think I spend all my free time playing basketball. I play for the school team and they say that I'm one of the best players. I go to the stadium to watch basketball games with my dad or with my friends. I support the LA Lakers, they are the best team in the NBA2. If I can ever play for Lakers, I'll be the happiest person in the world.

My name is Denis. I live in Vladivostok in the east of Russia. My hobby is computers. I got a computer two years ago and now I spend a lot of my free time in front of it. Sometimes my friends and I go to the Internet café and surf the net3. I used to play a lot of computer games but now I think they are rather boring. Using the computer helps me with my school as I can get all the information I need from the Internet.

I'm Julia and I come from Scotland. I have a hobby that is not very common nowadays -I read books. Very few of my classmates do any reading at all. They prefer television or videos but I love reading a lot. I go to the local library and read books there. I'm very lucky because my parents have a good home library and I can take any book I like. My friends call me a bookworm4 but they like it when I tell them what I have read in books. I think I could spend all my life reading. That's the most exciting pastime I can think of.







Speak about your hobby or favourite pastime and find out who else in your class is interested in the same activity.

I have always been interested in .... I spend a lot of time (doing something) .... I have a big collection of .... There is very little that I don't know about .... It's a rather (un)common hobby. I think it's an exciting pastime.



# Do It on Your Own

## The active voice or the passive voice?

1) a) Cristopher Columbus (discover) America in 1492. b) Nobody knows when this fact (discover).

2) a) The Post Office Tower in London (build) in 1964. b) It (build) to make the telephone and television systems of the British Capital better. c) Who (build) the Tretyakov Gallery in Moscow?

3) a) The small island (not, show) on the map. b) Mrs Pitkin (not, show) me her garden when I came to visit her.

4) a) Mr Woodriff (paint) very good portraits when he was younger. b) A lot of strange animals (paint) on the wall. We couldn't see all of them.

5) Jonathan Swift (write) "Gulliver's Travels" in the 18th century, "Battle of the Books" (write) by him too.

# 12 Write these sentences in the passive voice.

- 1) People grew this coffee in Brazil.
- 2) Someone made this piano in the 18th century.
- 3) Somebody sent a Christmas postcard to me.
- 4) Somebody bought a lot of vegetables and put them in the fridge.
- 5) Andrew took us to the living room.
- 6) People killed the last dodo many years ago.
- 7) They built a new hospital in our city last month.
- 8) People translated this book into many languages.
- 9) They taught reading in the first form.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> mad — безумный, сумасшедший

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> NBA = National Basketball Association

<sup>3</sup> to surf the net = to move from site to site on the Internet

<sup>4</sup> a bookworm ['bukw3:m] — книжный червь

# Step Two

# Do It Together

- Listen to the text, (75), about William Shakespeare and his home town and say which facts are true, false or not mentioned in it.
  - 1) William Shakespeare was born in 1546.
  - 2) One of William's grandfathers was a farmer.
  - 3) William's family was not poor.
  - 4) William went to a grammar school.
  - 5) In the  $16^{\rm th}$  century Stratford was a rather small town.
  - 6) There were about 2,000 houses in it.
  - 7) Stratford stands on a river.
  - 8) The name of the river is Avon.
  - 9) Now Stratford is a tourist centre.
  - 10) The house where William Shakespeare was born is a museum now.
  - 11) In the museum one can see not only some  $16^{\rm th}$  century books but also a collection of  $16^{\rm th}$  century clothes.
  - 12) The museum garden is not a usual one.





On Saturday the Greens had lots of things to do. They worked very hard and at the end of the day everything was done. What was done by the Greens?

Example: Mr Green spent two hours washing the car, so the car was washed.

- 1) Mr Green spent the afternoon making a bench, so ....
- 2) Mrs Green spent a lot of time planting the flowers and cutting the grass, so ....
- 3) Jake Green spent an hour and a half painting the garage, so ....
- 4) Margo Green spent three hours cleaning the windows in the house, so ....
- 5) Barbara Green spent the afternoon preparing dinner for the family, so  $\dots$  .

- 6) Sam Green spent a few hours building a new garage roof, so ....
- 7) Young Polly Green spent all the afternoon making and hanging new curtains, so ....



#### **Focus**

В английском языке в пассивном залоге употребляются только те глаголы, после которых может следовать прямое или косвенное дополнение.

I saw him at school yesterday. He was seen at school yesterday. John told me about it. I was told about it.

Заметь, что в значении «мне сказали» возможна только английская фраза "I was told". (Соответственно, he was told — ему сказали, she was told — ей сказали и т. д.) Глагол say в этом значении не употребляется. Глаголы типа come, go, live, sit и т. д. в пассивном залоге не употребляются.

He came home late.

Jack went to the library a minute ago.

- Change the active voice into the passive voice where it is possible.
  - 1) A beautiful town lay on the river.
  - 2) Someone remembered these facts.
  - 3) The valley stretched for miles.
  - 4) People built a lot of skyscrapers in New York.
  - 5) People saved some extinct animals and their habitats.
  - 6) A small polar bear lived in the city zoo.
  - 7) My granny grows daisies and pansies in her garden.
  - 8) Dick travelled to Australia last spring.
  - 9) What happened in the class yesterday?
  - 10) They discovered a small island in the middle of the lake.



#### Focus

Обрати внимание, что если предложение в активном залоге содержит два дополнения, прямое и косвенное, то в пассивном залоге возможны два варианта.

1. They gave Andy an apple. (*The active voice*.) — Они дали Энди яблоко. An apple was given to Andy. Andy was given an apple. (*The passive voice*.) — Энди дали яблоко.

<sup>1</sup> to mention ['menfən] — упоминать

<sup>1</sup> where it is possible — где это возможно

2. Someone showed me a new dictionary. — Кто-то показал мне новый словарь.

A new dictionary was shown to me. I was shown a new dictionary.

При этом второй вариант является более употребительным.

Сравни: I was told a very interesting story. — Мне рассказали очень интересную историю.

They were asked about the score of the game. — Их спросили о счете игры. Sarah was given two sweets. — Саре дали две конфеты. Воb was shown the new library. — Бобу показали новую библиотеку.

- 4 Read the sentences and say how *present simple passive* is formed. Then translate the sentences into Russian.
  - Ham told to come back at 5.
    Coffee is grown in Brazil.
    Butter and cheese are made from milk.
  - African languages are not usually taught in Russian schools.

    I am not included in the team.
    - This poem is not translated into French.
  - ? Are the Hobsons invited to your party? Is English spoken here?
  - Why are you asked to go there?
    What kind of music is played at Christmas in your country?
- 5 Change the active voice into passive.
- 1) We form the passive voice with the help of the verb to be.
  - 2) People grow oranges in Italy.
  - 3) They build a lot of new houses in our country.
  - 4) People often make tables of plastic ['plæstik].
  - 5) They translate the Harry Potter books into many languages.
  - 6) They don't teach foreign languages at this primary school.
  - 7) They don't show such films on TV.
  - 8) My granny doesn't grow tomatoes here.

- 9) People don't build tall buildings on this island.
- 10) What questions does your teacher usually ask you in class?
- 11) Do you hear such melodies here?
- 12) What books do they usually buy for their children?
- 13) Does Mr Ross usually invite his neighbours to his parties?
- 14) What poems do the pupils learn by heart in the 8th form?
- [3] Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [49] (76), and repeat.

1

entertainment [,entə'temmənt] — развлечение act [ækt] — 1) действовать, поступать; 2) играть в пьесе или фильме possible ['ppsɪbəl] — возможный impossible [ɪm'ppsɪbəl] — невозможный god [gpd] — бог recite [rɪ'saɪt] — декламировать, читать наизусть introduce [,ɪntrə'djws] — представлять кого-либо, вводить куда-то

circus ['s3:kəs] — цирк
connect [kə'nekt] — соединять, подключать
consider [kən'sɪdə] — считать, полагать (рассматривать, тщательно обдумывать)
арреаг [ə'рɪə] — появляться
play [pleɪ] — пьеса
audience ['ɔːdiəns] — аудитория, публика, зрители
as well — также, тоже
by and by — постепенно

B.

entertainment: real entertainment, the usual entertainment, the world of entertainment, to enjoy entertainment. I think all people enjoy entertainment. Let's take a look at the world of entertainment. Cinema is the entertainment of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

act: to act as sb, to act quickly, to act in a performance. We have talked enough, it's time to act. Helen sometimes acts as her father's secretary. A famous actor, a popular actress.

possible: a possible visit, it is possible that..., if (it is) possible, as soon as possible, when/whenever possible, where/wherever possible. Everything is possible. I relax with a good book wherever possible.

impossible: impossible children. It is impossible for elephants to fly.

god: In ancient Greece people had a lot of gods. Mars was the Roman god of war.

recite: to recite a poem, to recite a dialogue. Alice had to recite her poem in front of her class.

introduce: to introduce sb to sb, to introduce actors to a play. My parents introduced me to their guests. Let me introduce myself. He introduced himself as Doctor Desmond Morton.

circus: to go to the circus, to take sb to the circus. My little granddaughter asks me to take her to the circus again.

connect: to connect sth to/with sth (sb), to connect the printer to the computer, to connect the two farms. How are you connected with the business? We are not connected to the Internet.

consider: to consider facts, to consider doing sth. Max is considering my idea. I'm seriously considering leaving the company. Professor Harvey is considered (to be) a real expert.

appear: to appear on television (in the film), to appear from the room, to appear from behind the tree. One day a stranger appeared on my doorstep.

disappear: to disappear suddenly. The sun disappeared behind the clouds.

reappear = to appear again.

play: a modern play, a funny play, an exciting play. People believe that Shakespeare wrote 37 plays.

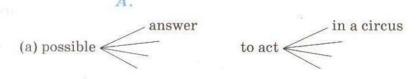
audience: an unusual audience, a thankful audience, a young audience. Audiences all over the world loved Chaplin's films.

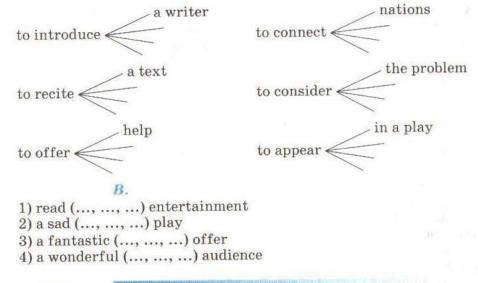
offer: to offer entertainment, to offer a cup of coffee, to offer to help. They haven't offered me the job yet. We'll be happy to offer you all the help we can.

as well = too = also. Buy some potatoes, please, and some carrots as well.

by and by = after a short time. By and by they got to know each other.

# Complete the rows of words.





#### Focus

Ты уже знаешь, что русские слова *тоже, также* в английском языке соответствуют разным единицам — **too** и **also**. Это же значение могут передавать единицы **as well, either** ['aɪðə].

1. Когда мы просим кого-либо что-то сделать (или требуем это), следует использовать слова *too* или *as well. Also* в подобных случаях не употребляется.

Open the door, and open the window as well/too.

2. И too, и as well всегда употребляются в конце предложения.

My sister speaks English, too. My sister speaks English as well.

3. *Also* обычно употребляется в середине предложения либо перед основным глаголом, либо после вспомогательного глагола или после глагола *to be.* 

He also speaks English. She can also speak English. He is also a fine actor.

Иногда also может использоваться в начале предложения.

John goes in for swimming. Also he often plays basketball.

4. Обычно *also* не используется в отрицательных предложениях. В этом случае употребляется слово *either*.

I don't know him either. If you don't go, I won't either.

- B Complete the sentences using also, as well, either or too.
  - 1) Vera speaks English and she ... speaks Chinese. 2) Do exercise 5 and do exercise 6 ... 3) Does Mr Gordon ... live in Oxford? 4) I went home early, and John did ... 5) I never read such fairy-tales to little children ... 6) We can ... buy tickets for this show.
  - 7) "Harry Potter" is a children's book. "Peter Pan" is ... a book for children. 8) We haven't seen "Titanic" ... . 9) Translate the text and write exercise one ....
- 9 A. Listen to the sentences, (77), and guess what the new words mean.
  - 1) Prehistoric [,pri:hr'storik] people did not have a developed language.
  - 2) The drama ['dra:ma] of A. P. Chekhov is very well-known in the world.
  - 3) We organized [o:'gənaizd] a party to celebrate the end of the school year.
  - 4) A chorus ['ko:res] is a group of people who sing together.
  - 5) D'Artagnan is the main character ['kærɪktə] of "The Three Musketeers" by Alexandre Dumas.
  - 6) "Othello" is a tragedy ['trædidi] and "Twelfth Night" is a comedy ['kpmadi] by William Shakespeare.
  - 7) Spartacus is probably the most famous Roman gladiator ['qlædieɪtə].
  - 8) We sat near the arena [ə'ri:nə] and could see the circus animals very well.
  - 9) Easter and Christmas are religious [11/11/25] festivals.
  - 10) The Renaissance [ $\pi$ 'neisəns] was the period in Europe between the 14<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> centuries, when the art, literature and ideas of ancient Greece were discovered again and widely studied.
  - 11) A moral ['moral] person always does the right things.
  - 12) I forgot the words of the song and had to improvise ['improvaz]. Everyone laughed.
  - 13) The speaker stood on a high platform ['plætfo:m] and all the people around could see and hear him well.
  - 14) At our geography lessons we use a lot of maps and a big globe [gləʊb].
  - 15) A.N. Ostrovsky was one of the best Russian dramatists ['dræmətɪsts], he wrote a lot of interesting plays.
  - 16) Have you ever been to a concert ['konsət] of classical music?
  - B. Read the new words again, learn to pronounce them right.

- A. Read the text below and say which of these ideas are not in it.
  - 1) The history of entertainment is very old.
  - 2) Prehistoric people had special places for singing, dancing and story-telling.
  - 3) Greek drama was the first public entertainment in Europe.
  - 4) We know two kinds of Greek drama.
  - 5) Greek tragedies always ended in the most important character dving.
  - 6) There were new forms of entertainment introduced by ancient Romans.
  - 7) In the Middle Ages the church didn't let the theatre develop freely.
  - 8) The first performances took place in the streets.
  - 9) The Renaissance was the time when the theatre developed fast and became very important.
  - 10) Comedies and tragedies by William Shakespeare were written in the Golden Age of Theatre.
  - 11) Cinema is the most popular of modern entertainments.
  - 12) Television has become the number one entertainment for modern people.

# The History of Entertainment

Nearly everyone enjoys entertainment. The beginnings of popular entertainment go back to prehistoric times, when dance, music and story-telling were very important.

The traditions of entertainment began in ancient Greece about 2,500 years ago with the development of Greek drama. In those days festivals were organized to celebrate Dionysus [,daiə'naisəs], the Greek god of wine and new life, with song and dance. Later poets began to write stories for a large group of performers (a chorus and an actor to recite). Then another actor was introduced which made a dialogue between characters possible. There were two forms of classical ['klæsikəl] Greek drama — tragedy and comedy.

The Romans continued the traditions of Greece and developed other kinds of entertainment as well. The beginnings of the circus are connected with gladiators fighting in public arenas.



In the Middle Ages1 the church considered entertainment and drama wrong, but by and by drama reappeared with religious and moral plays.

In the time of Renaissance the theatre became less religious and there was a new interest in Greek and Roman drama. Common people2 preferred comedies performed by a travelling group of actors. At first, the actors had no text, only an idea of what was going to happen and had to improvise. They usually performed on high platforms in public places. The actors offered entertainment which included plays, songs and dances.

The Golden Age of Theatre began when the first special theatres were built. The first of such theatres was opened in London in 1652. Soon there appeared a few others including the famous Globe Theatre. Among the writers who worked for these theatres was William Shakespeare, one of the greatest dramatists in any language. Shakespeare gave his audience great literature but at the same time he gave them popular entertainment.

Nowadays people entertain themselves by listening to music, watching TV programmes, films and videos, going to concerts and circus shows but the theatre is still among our favourite entertainments.

B. Listen to the tape, (78), and read the text again after it.

#### Read the text "The History of Entertainment" again and say the same in one word.

Example: A theatre or a film show, a concert, etc. — entertainment

- 1) Belonging to the time before history was written down.
- 2) Belonging to the time of very long ago.
- 3) Plays for acting.
- 4) A group of people singing together.
- 5) Talk between two people, often in films or plays.
- 6) A person in a play, film or story.
- 7) A drama about sad events with a sad end.
- 8) A show with performances by acrobats ['ækrəbæt], clowns [klaun] and animals, often travelling from place to place.
- 9) The period between the 11th and 15th centuries in Europe.
- 10) A writer working for the theatre.
- 11) People watching or listening to a performance.
- 12) Musical entertainment.

#### 12 Answer the questions.

- 1) Were music, dancing and story-telling in prehistoric times forms of entertainment or were they connected with magic<sup>1</sup>?
- 2) In what country did the history of drama begin? When did it happen? With what event was it connected?
- 3) Whom did they call an "actor" in ancient Greece?
- 4) What are the two forms of classical Greek drama?
- 5) What do you know about Euripides [ju:'rɪpɪdi:z] and Sophocles ['spfəkli:z]?
- 6) What popular entertainment of nowadays began in ancient Rome?
- 7) Why weren't the Middle Ages the best time for the development of drama?
- 8) What did Renaissance people rediscover?
- 9) What were theatrical performances like before there appeared real theatres?
- 10) How do you understand the meaning of Golden Age? What time is considered to be the Golden Age of Theatre?

<sup>1</sup> the Middle Ages — Средние века

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> common people — простые люди

<sup>1</sup> magic ['mæфіk] — магия

11) How much do you know about William Shakespeare?

12) What are the most popular forms of entertainment today? Which of them do you prefer?

#### Do It on Your Own

- 13 A. Write who these pictures were painted by.
- 1) "Morning in the Pine Forest"



- a) Claude Monet
- b) Victor Vasnetsov
- c) Leonardo Da Vinci
- d) Vincent Van Gogh

4) "Alenushka"

- e) Karl Brullov
- f) Ivan Shishkin

2) "The Horse Rider"



5) "Sunflowers"



3) "The Mona Lisa"



6) "Waterlily Pond"



#### B. Write who these books were written by.

- 1) "Life on the Mississippi"
- 2) "Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone"
- 3) "Peter Pan"
- 4) "Oliver Twist"
- 5) "Robinson Crusoe"
- 6) "War and Peace"

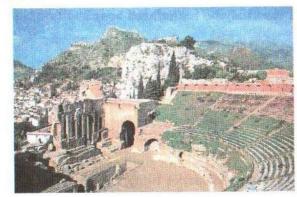
- a) Leo Tolstoy
- b) Joanne Rowling
- c) Mark Twain
- d) Daniel Defo
- e) Charles Dickens
- f) James M. Barry

# Step Three

# Do It Together

- Listen to the dialogues, [40], and say where they are taking place.
- Complete the text with theatre words. Check, [ (80).

The theatre at Delphi in Greece was built in the 300s BC. It was so well built that even people sitting right at the back could hear every word the actors spoke.



Theatre

A th... is a place where p...s are performed by a...s and watched by an au....

The earliest theatres we know about were in Greece where d... in the form of t...s and c...s was enjoyed by theatre lovers. Greek theatres looked like big stadiums open to the sky but they were so well built that everyone could see and hear the p...ers well. Roman th...s looked like Greek th...s. The Romans built a th... in nearly every large town in the country. Some of the Greek and Roman d...s are remembered today and their p...s are performed in modern th...s.

- 3 Read out the sentences in the passive voice from exercise 2.
- 4 Read the sentences and say how *future passive* is formed. Then translate the sentences into Russian.
  - + Ann will be invited to the party.

    The room will be cleaned tomorrow.

    The fruit will be bought on Sunday.
  - Tom won't be helped.

    The letter won't be sent tomorrow.

    The cake won't be made by granny.
  - Will flowers be grown here?
    Will the tickets be brought in the morning?
    Will the story be translated soon?
  - When will the car be washed?
    Why will the letter be written in French?
    Where will the flowers be planted?
- Say the same in a different way. Use the passive voice.
  - 1) We'll remember the play.
  - 2) People heard a loud noise in the garden.
  - 3) Ann won't clean the carpet tomorrow.
  - 4) She will do it next Saturday.
  - 5) What will you grow in the kitchen garden in summer?
  - 6) I won't forget your help.
  - 7) They speak only English in their club.
  - 8) They did not include all endangered birds on the list.
  - 9) They will make a discovery soon.
  - 10) Will somebody draw the emblem of our club?



#### Focus

В английском языке в страдательном залоге употребляются также глаголы, которые требуют после себя предлога: to talk about, to send for, to listen to, to look at, to think of, to look after, to laugh at, to speak to/about, to ask for, to wait for. В страдательном залоге эти предлоги всегда сохраняются.

He is much spoken about. — О нем много говорят.

The doctor was sent for. — За доктором послали.

She is often waited for. — Ее часто ждут.

Such jokes are not laughed at. — Над такими шутками не смеются.

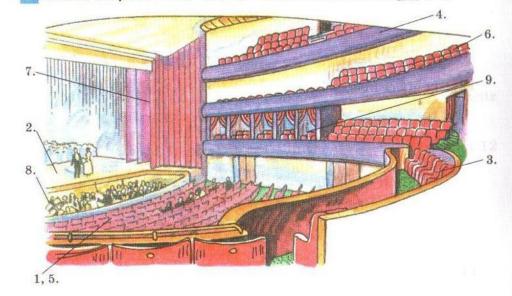
The children will be looked after. — За детьми присмотрят.

John will be spoken to. — С Джоном поговорят.

#### 6 How can you say the same using the passive voice?

1) People speak a lot about this film. 2) They spoke to Mr Hardson. 3) My cousins will look after my pet. 4) People will laugh at you. 5) They sent for my parents. 6) The boy is so unusual, everybody looks at him. 7) People often ask for such dictionaries. 8) Nobody spoke to me in such a way. 9) People will never talk about such things. 10) I'm sure everybody will listen to Harry.

7 Look at the pictures and read the theatre words. Check, [49] (81).



A.

B.

- 1) stalls [sto:lz] 2) stage [steick]
- 3) balcony ['bælkəni]
- 4) gallery ['qæləri]
- 5) rows [rouz] of seats [si:ts]

6) circle ['s3:kəl]

7) curtains ['k3:tnz]

8) orchestra-pit ['ɔ:kɪstrə,pɪt]

9) box



10) cloakroom ['klaukrum]



11) foyer ['foiei]



12) box office ['boks, pfis]



13) buffet ['bufei]



14) ballet ['bælei]



15) opera ['ppərə]



16) programme ['prəugræm]



17) opera glasses ['ppərə 'gla:siz]



18) costume ['kpstjum]



С обозначением мест в театре употребляется предлог in: in the stalls, in the box, in the balcony, in Row B, но on the stage.

A. Listen to the dialogue "At the Box Office", [62], and act it out.

### At the Box Office

A: Hello. How can I help you?

B: I'd like two seats for tomorrow.

A: Morning or evening performance?

B: Evening, please.

A: Where do you want your seats?

B: In the stalls, back or middle rows.

A: I am sorry, but the stalls are sold out1. We have two good seats in a box at 35 pounds.

B: That's more than I wanted to pay.

A: Then I can offer you two seats in the circle, front row, at 12 pounds.

B: I think I'll take those. Thanks very much.

A: You're welcome.

B. Can you buy a theatre ticket? Work in pairs and practise.

<sup>1</sup> are sold [səʊld] out — проданы

9 Learn some new words and word combinations. Listen to the tape, (83), and repeat.

#### A.

invite [In'vait] — приглашать invitation [,Invi'teɪʃən] — приглашение arrive [ə'raɪv] — прибывать ticket ['tɪkɪt] — билет expensive [ɪk'spensɪv] — дорогой (о цене, стоимости) fantastic [fæn'tæstɪk] — фантастический, потрясающий impress [ɪm'pres] — производить впечатление

impression [Im'prefən] — впечатление rise [raiz] — подниматься scenery ['si:nəri] — декорации applause [ə'plɔ:z] — аплодисменты applaud [ə'plɔ:d] — аплодировать to go down/up — гаснуть/загораться (об огнях, свете) at last — наконеп

#### B.

invite: to invite sb to/for sth, to invite to the theatre, to be invited to the performance. Why don't you invite them for supper? invitation: Nobody in the office received an invitation to the party.

arrive: to arrive in/at some place, to arrive home, to arrive at the house, to arrive in the country. They arrived in Moscow in late October.

arrival: an early arrival, on arrival, the arrival of the flight. Johnson was arrested on his arrival to New York.

ticket: a cinema ticket, a theatre ticket, a lottery ticket, a match ticket; to get tickets for the game (performance, show, concert, trip); to get a train (bus, plane) ticket.

**expensive**: an expensive car, expensive tastes. My cousin always wears expensive clothes. The seats in the stalls were very expensive.

fantastic: a fantastic idea. It's a fantastic performance! You've done a fantastic job.

impress: to impress sb. His answer impressed me. I was impressed by what he said.

impression: the first impression, to make an impression on sb. I know you want to make a good impression on everyone you meet.

rise (rose, risen): to rise in the sky, to rise up, to rise from the table. As the sun rose in the sky, it became much warmer. Bob rose up and went to the window. The plane rose in the air. Edward finished his meal and rose from the table.

scenery: (always singular, no indefinite article). They don't use a lot of scenery in modern performances. The scenery on the stage was really wonderful.

applause: a loud applause, a storm of applause. There was a loud applause at the end of the performance.

applaud: to applaud a speech, to applaud an actor. The audience laughed and applauded.

be over: The performance was over at 11 p.m. When are your classes usually over? The meeting was over and everybody went home.

go down (up): The lights went down and the performance began. The lights went up and we could see the room well.

at last: They have come back at last. At last we got the answer we wanted to get.



#### Focus

Обрати внимание на употребление предлогов.

1. После глагола *arrive* могут следовать только два предлога *at* (когда речь идет о прибытии в здание, на станцию, небольшое селение или иное не очень крупное место) и *in* (когда речь идет о стране, крупном городе).

We arrived in Moscow late at night.

When we arrived at the hotel, Mr Fox hadn't come yet.

Ho: to arrive home. I finally arrived home.

2. После слова ticket используются предлоги to и for. Сравни: 1

to	for
a ticket to the theatre	a ticket for a performance (play)
a ticket to the cinema	a ticket for a film
a ticket to the concert hall	a ticket for a concert
a ticket to the music hall	a ticket for a show
a ticket to Moscow	
a ticket to Britain	

3. Сравни английские сочетания со словом ticket и их русские эквиваленты.

a train ticket — билет на поезд a bus ticket — билет на автобус a plane ticket — билет на самолет a boat ticket — билет на пароход

Use the prepositions to complete the sentences where necessary.

at, in, on, to, for, of, by, from

1) A plane ticket ... London is more expensive than a train ticket. 2) When we arrived ... the hotel we were asked to wait. 3) When Florence arrived ... the theatre, the performance had already begun. 4) Can I have a ticket ... Rome? 5) How much were the tickets ... the performance? 6) The Thompsons arrived ... Australia ... the beginning of June. 7) Have you received an invitation ... the party? 8) Our seats were not ... the stalls, they were ... the balcony. 9) The ballet made a strong impression ... the girl. 10) I was impressed ... her words. 11) Johnny rose ... his seat and went ... the window. 12) There was a storm ... applause after the performance. 13) Have you invited Paul ... dinner? 14) Do they use a lot ... scenery in "Swan Lake"?

11 A. Read the paragraphs of the text and put them in the right order.

#### Lisa's First Visit to the Bolshoi Theatre

a) During the interval we walked around in the foyer. I told Alec how much I liked the ballet. It was really wonderful, I said I would love to see some other ballet some day. So we went to the box office and bought two tickets for "The Nutcracker"1. Then we had ice-cream and coffee in the buffet.

b) When we arrived at the theatre, we left our coats at the cloakroom. Our seats were in the stalls. I had a look at the tickets. They were not very expen-



sive but we could see the stage very well. Alec bought me a programme and gave me his opera glasses. The curtains were fantastic. As we had some time before the beginning I walked to the stage and the orchestra-pit and looked at the hall. Its red and golden interior [in'tipria] impressed me very much.





c) Last autumn my cousin invited me to the Bolshoi Theatre. I had never been there before and was really excited when Alec told me we were going to see "Swan Lake", the famous ballet by P. I. Tchaikovsky.

d) When at last the ballet was over and the music came to an end, there was a storm of applause. I applauded loudly too. I really en-

joved myself.

e) Soon the lights went down, then the curtains rose and the dancers appeared on the stage. I liked every minute of the first act [ækt] - the scenery, the costumes, the music and the way they danced.

B. Listen to the tape, [84], and read the text again after it.

- Use some of these word combinations and tell your friends about your or somebody else's visit to the theatre. (You can use Lisa's story as a model.)
  - · to buy tickets at the box office
  - · to be invited to the theatre (to invite sb to the theatre)
  - · to feel excited
  - · to listen to an opera (to see a ballet, a drama, a comedy, a tragedv)
  - · to arrive at the theatre
  - · to leave the clothes at the cloakroom
  - · to have seats in the stalls (gallery, circle, balcony, in a box)
  - · (not) expensive tickets
  - · to buy a programme
  - · to have one's opera glasses
  - · to go down/up (about the lights)
  - · to walk to the stage (orchestra-pit)
  - · during the interval
  - · to go to the buffet

<sup>1 &</sup>quot;The Nutcracker" ['nat,krækə] — «Щелкунчик» (балет на музыку П. И. Чайковского)

- · to be over (about the performance)
- · to rise/fall (about the curtains)
- · to applaud loudly
- · to enjoy oneself

## Do It on Your Own

Open the brackets to complete the text. Use the passive voice where necessary.

# Theatre in the Time of William Shakespeare

The first real theatre (build) by a carpenter¹ and part-time actor called James Burbage. It (call) the Theatre. Burbage's son Richard (become) the country's first well-known actor. In those days the theatre (be) very different from the theatre today. There (be) no actresses², young women's parts (perform) by the company's clowns. All the actors (have) to be musicians and dancers. Poetic drama (introduce) by Christopher Marlowe ['mɑːləʊ], a great dramatist who (kill) in a duel ['djuːəl] at the age of 29. The audiences also (enjoy) the plays which (write) by Thomas Kyd, Ben Johnson and John Lyly.

14 Write the same in English.

Вечернее представление, место в партере, красивые декорации, театральный бинокль, потрясающие (фантастические) костюмы, шквал аплодисментов, билет на пьесу, ирибыть на вокзал, приглашение на обед, произвести хорошее впечатление на зрителей, приехать домой, билет на оперу, во время антракта.

# Step Four

# Do It Together

- Listen to the text "The Movies Come to Hollywood", [85], and say which of the facts were not mentioned in it.
  - 1) At first the Willcoxes bought two lemon farms near Los Angeles.
  - 2) The Willcoxes called the land they had bought Hollywood.

- 3) Until 1910, audiences did not know the names of their favourite actors and actresses.
- 4) Good weather attracted film-makers to California.
- 5) Actors and actresses didn't talk in the first films.

# Hollywood studios



Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer



The Fox Company



**Universal Studios** 



Warner Brothers



Columbia Pictures



**Paramount Studios** 

a carpenter ['ka:pintə] — плотник

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> an actress ['æktris] — актриса

Work in small groups and find out who takes the greatest interest in theatre. Ask and answer.

#### Find out

- · if your friends have ever been to the theatre
- · what theatre(s) they go to or have been to
- · if they often (not very often, seldom, hardly ever, never) go to the theatre
- · if they know any names of famous Russian theatres
- · if they know any names of famous Russian actors and actresses
- if they can give 3—5 names of well-known Russian dramatists
- if they can give 3—5 names of famous dramatists from other countries
- · what names of popular operas and ballets they know
- · what composers write and wrote music for opera and ballet
- what famous opera houses around the world they know and where they are situated
- Here are some facts about films and film-makers. Read the text and say which sentences can be used in the passive voice.

# Some Facts from the History of Hollywood

People remember "The Birth of a Nation" as one of the most famous Hollywood silent films. They first showed it in 1915 and it took nearly three hours. The film was about American history. A lot of people who had never been inside a cinema before saw this film.

The Golden Age of Cinema began with the talkies<sup>3</sup> — when the actors in the film were able to talk. In 1927 Al Jolson, the Russianborn Hollywood actor and singer, said a few words and sang six songs in the film "The Jazz Singer". The public loved him.

In 1932 they introduced a new camera ['kæmərə] which could make colour films for the cinemas. Soon big audiences enjoyed colour films.

One of the most popular films of all times was probably the colour film "Gone with the Wind". The audiences first saw it in 1939. The film won eight Oscars. They still show this legendary film in cinemas and on television all over the world.

Cinema uses special effects when it is too difficult or dangerous to do something in the usual way. A good example is the popular film "Jurassic [dwəˈræsik] Park" (1993).

The big dinosaurs in the film were not real, of course! They made lots of models of each of them. Today, they use computers more

and more in special effects.

In some cinemas which people call IMAX DOME ['aiməks,dəum] theatres they use a big, 30 metre screen<sup>1</sup>, and put the audience right in the centre of everything that is happening in the film.



#### Focus

Обрати внимание на различие предлогов в следующих сочетаниях:

#### быть сделанным из чего-то

#### to be made of

(Используется, когда материал, из которого сделан предмет, не подвергался качественной переработке, т. е. не изменил своей сущности: the pen is made of plastic.)

The table is made of plastic. The key is made of metal. The bench is made of wood. The book is made of paper.

#### to be made from

(Используется, когда материал подвергся переработке и в результате стал чем-то иным, например, яблоки при варке превратились в варенье: the jam is made from apples. Обычно предлог *from* используется тогда, когда речь идет о приготовлении пищи).

Butter is made from milk.

Borsch is made from different vegetables.

This fruit salad is made from apples, plums and apricots.

# A. Work with these material nouns. Listen to the tape, [46], and repeat.

1) learn them gold [gəʊld] — золото silver ['sɪlvə] — серебро steel [sti:l] — сталь wood [wʊd] — дерево brick [brik] — кирпич

cardboard ['ka:db::d] — картон wool [wol] — шерсть cotton ['kɒtn] — хлопок china ['tʃaɪnə] — фарфор

<sup>1 &</sup>quot;The Birth of a Nation" — «Рождение нации» (название фильма)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> silent ['saɪlənt] — немой

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>в</sup> a talkie ['tɔ:ki] — (разг.) звуковой фильм

<sup>1</sup> a screen [skri:n] — экран

#### 2) remember them

stone paper rubber metal glass plastic

#### B. What are these things usually made of?

Example: Books are usually made of paper and cardboard.



- 1) matryoshka dolls
- 2) sweaters and warm socks
- 3) summer dresses and T-shirts
- 4) windows
- 5) cups and plates
- 6) planes and cars
- 7) houses
- 8) bridges

- 9) clocks and watches
- 10) boxes and cartons
- 11) CDs and tapes
- 12) money
- 13) city monuments
- 14) postcards
- 15) rings and earrings
- 16) balls and baloons

C. Say what your favourite food and drink are made from.



#### Focus

Модальные глаголы should, can, must и эквивалент must — have to — часто употребляются с пассивным инфинитивом, при этом сказуемое строится по следующей схеме:

#### [модальный глагол] + [be] + $[V_3]$

The letter must be written. — Письмо должно быть написано. (Письмо нужно написать.)

The answer should be given. — Ответ следует дать.

The record can be listened to. — Пластинку можно послушать.

The books have to be returned to the library. — Книги необходимо вернуть в библиотеку.

The text must be translated. — Текст должен быть переведен.

#### Complete the sentences with the given verbs, active or passive.

- 1) Kevin should (tell) about it as soon as possible<sup>1</sup>.
- 2) This letter must (answer) at once.
- 3) Fred has to (tell) about the meeting.
- 4) This text can (translate) into Chinese.
- 5) Tom should (invite) to the party.
- 6) Children should (teach) to speak politely.
- 7) It's too hot. Milk must (keep) in the fridge.
- 8) The film can (show) after lunch.
- 9) This fact must (explain) to the students.
- 10) The text must (read) by the children.

<sup>1</sup> as soon as possible — как можно быстрее

6 Learn some new words. Listen to the tape, [ (87), and repeat.

A

I.
action ['ækʃən] film — остросюжетный фильм, боевик
thriller ['θгіlə] — остросюжетный фильм, боевик, триллер
science fiction ['saiəns ,fikʃən]
film — научно-фантастический фильм

adventure [əd'ventʃə] film — приключенческий фильм crime [kraɪm] film — детектив horror ['hɒrə] film — фильм ужасов psychological [,saɪkə'lɒʤɪkəl] film — психологическая драма

II.

seem — казаться

price — цена

magic(al) ['mæʤikəl] — магический, волшебный

screen — экран
agree — соглашаться

besides [br'saidz] — кроме, кроме того attention [ə'tenfən] — внимание attentive [ə'tentiv] — внимательный

B

seem: to seem nice, to seem good, to seem all right. That apple is bad but this one seems all right. It seems cold today. He is not what he seems. It seems to me...

price: the price of sth, low/high prices, at a low price, at half price, at what price. What was the price of your new bicycle? She has become very successful but at what price? We bought the video cassette at half price. Victor bought the pens at a small price, at the price of 5 roubles each.

magic(al): a magic trick, a magic carpet, a magic show; a magical world (evening, melody). It was a truly magical night.

screen: a wide screen, a computer screen, to appear on the screen, to come to the screen. A new action film will come to the screen later this month.

agree: to agree with sb, to agree to do sth, to agree to a plan (an idea). We agreed to leave at once. Do you think John will agree with us? "Gone with the Wind" is one of the best films of the last century. — I couldn't agree more. (I quite agree with you.)

disagree: to disagree with sb. I strongly disagree with the last speaker.

besides: I don't like this coat and, besides, it costs too much. There are many rivers in England besides the Thames.

attention: to pay attention to sth/sb. You should pay attention to

what your teacher says.

attentive: to be attentive to sb/sth; an attentive listener, an attentive teacher. Our family doctor is friendly and attentive. Be attentive to your granny.

- At TV shows people are often asked different questions. How will you answer the questions about cinema and film making?
  - 1) What action films have you seen lately? 2) Are you fond of horror films? Why? Why not? 3) Sherlock Holmes ['s:lok, houmz] is one of the world-famous characters of crime films. Do you know any others? 4) Are psychological dramas popular nowadays? Why do you think they are (aren't)? 5) Who do you think prefers to watch science fiction films more: men or women, young people or old people? 6) Can you call the film about Robinson Cruso an adventure film? Why? Why not? 7) What other adventure films have you seen or heard of? 8) Can you give the titles ['taɪtlz] of some thrillers? 9) Does it seem to you that cinema tickets are expensive nowadays? What is the usual price for evening/morning shows? 10) Do you think the size of a screen is important if you watch a film at the cinema? Which is better - a usual screen or a wide screen? 11) Some people say that the world of the cinema is a magical world. Do you agree (disagree) with them? Why? 12) What Hollywood studios besides Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer do you know? 13) What influences your choice of films? Do you pay attention to the ads1? 14) Do you think it is possible or impossible to watch all the new films of your favourite genre ['zpnra] that come to the screen nowadays?
- 8 A. Read the text and match the titles below with its four paragraphs. There is one extra title.
  - a) Why We Go to the Cinema
  - b) How Cinema Began
  - c) Where We Watch Films -
  - d) Cinema Is the Great World of Fantasy
  - e) Tastes Differ<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Tastes differ. — О вкусах не спорят.

the ads (advertisements [əd'vз:tismənts]) — реклама



#### Let's Go to the Cinema!

1) Today it is possible to buy a video and watch a film at home, but millions of people all over the world still prefer to go to their town or city cinema for a "night out". And before television arrived in people's homes, a visit to the cinema was something really special and truly wonderful.

2) The Golden Age of film-making and going to the cinema — was between 1930 and 1950. Film stars seemed like kings and queens. Cinemas were "picture1 palaces" where, for the price of a ticket,

you could find yourself in a magical world. In that world anything and everything was possible.

3) Nowadays cinema audiences are much smaller and usually younger than the audiences of the Golden Age. Many of the "picture palaces" are now multi-screen cinemas with four or five small cinemas inside one building. Today's films appear on video, and then on TV after cinema audiences have seen them. But some films don't look so good on TV, they need a large screen to be really enjoyed. Television can't do it. You may agree or disagree with it, but for many people the cinema is still the only place to watch a film. Besides, the cinema is the only place where you can watch a brand-new¹ film before your friends do it and decide if you like it.

4) Of course, everyone has their own favourite kinds of films — action films or thrillers, comedies, psychological dramas, science fiction, adventure and crime films, horror films or musicals. But cinema is always in the focus of our attention; it thrills, entertains and educates us.

B. Listen to the tape, [88], and read the text again after it.

#### Read the text "Let's Go to the Cinema" again and find in it the words and word combinations which mean

- 1) an evening when you go out to a cinema, theatre or party
- 2) a period of time when the best work was done
- 3) a well-known actor or actress in cinema pictures
- 4) money you pay for a ticket
- 5) a place which is strange, wonderful and enjoyable
- 6) film-goers
- 7) having a few screens
- 8) new and not used
- 9) a film that tells a very exciting story, usually of crime or adventure
- 10) a funny film which ends happily
- 11) a film about imaginary<sup>2</sup> future events and characters, often about travelling to other planets
- 12) a film where terrible and dangerous things happen, such as dead people coming to life
- 13) a film with spoken words, songs and often dances

 $<sup>^{1}</sup>$  **picture** = film = movie

brand-new = new and completely unused

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> imaginary [ı'mædзınəri] — воображаемый

# Cinema some time ago

- before television arrived
- · the Golden Age of Cinema
- · a special event
- · big audiences
- · film stars were like kings and queens
- · smaller cinemas
- · lower ticket prices

# Cinema today

- · prefer to watch video films or TV
- · smaller and younger audiences
- · higher ticket prices
- · modern multi-screen cinemas
- · brand-new films
- · better picture and sound
- · a lot of special effects [1'fekts]

## Cinemas and television

- · look better/worse on a large screen
- · watch brand-new films
- · watch a film before you can watch it on video
- · watch a film in the comfort of your home
- · watch a film with your friends

# Films of different kinds

- · tastes differ
- · films for older and younger audiences
- favourite kinds of films
- · films that entertain us
- · serious films
- · some people prefer..., other people prefer...

## Do It on Your Own

- Use of or from to complete the sentences.
  - 1) Is your new skirt made ... wool or cotton? 2) As everybody knows, Pinocchio was made ... wood. 3) This tasty cocktail is made ... milk, ice-cream and fruit juice. 4) We have made this juice ... fresh oranges. 5) A lot of old cottages in Scotland are made ... stone. 6) In Asia they often use tables and chairs made ... bamboo. 7) My grandmother's jam made ... plums is really nice, we often have it for tea. 8) Watches made ... gold are very expensive. 9) What is this soup made ...? 10) The boat was not heavy because it was made ... rubber.
- Complete the sentences with the words in brackets, active or passive.
  - 1) Your friend (should/give) some unusual present for his 20th birthday.
  - 2) Don't you know that milk (should/keep) in a fridge?
  - 3) I tried but I (couldn't/open) the window.
  - 4) Someone (have to/take) the child home. He (can't/leave) here alone.
  - 5) This new book (must/read). It's wonderful!
  - 6) They (shouldn't/spend) so much time in front of the television.

# Step Five

# Do It Together

- Listen to the text about a famous British music band<sup>1</sup>, (89). Say whose favourite pastimes they are.
  - · singing
  - · talking
  - · eating Italian food
  - · having parties and meeting new people



<sup>1</sup> a music band — музыкальная группа

E x a m p l e: A glass jug. The jug is made of glass. Apple jam. The jam is made from apples.

1) paper money, 2) china vase, 3) fur coat, 4) vegetable salad,

5) metal ring, 6) tomato soup, 7) stone bench, 8) silver chain,

9) orange marmalade



#### Focus

После некоторых глаголов английского языка: *look* (выглядеть), *seem, appear, taste, smell*<sup>1</sup> (пахнуть), *sound, feel*, в отличие от русского языка, не могут следовать наречия, после них используются прилагательные. Сравни:

Russian

#### English

Музыка звучит громко.

The music sounds loud [laud].

Джон выглядит молодо.

John looks young.

Алиса чувствует себя плохо. Alice feels bad, she doesn't feel well/good.

(В последнем примере well является старой формой прилагательного.)

Обрати внимание на различия в значениях глагола to look.

Jane looks sad. (После look следует прилагательное.)

Джейн выглядит грустной.

Jane looked at me sadly. (После look следует наречие.)

Джейн посмотрела на меня грустно.

- A. Complete the sentences with one of the verbs seem, look, sound, taste, smell or feel in the right form.
  - 1) How are you ... today? I'm fine, thank you. In fact I've never ... better.
  - 2) The water ... so cold. I don't think I'll swim today.
  - 3) I can ... something nice cooking in the kitchen. What's for dinner?
  - 4) The language they are speaking ... strange. I'm sure it's not a European language.
  - 5) Evening came. It was very quiet. The air ... of grasses and flowers.

- 6) What's the matter with George today? He ... very unhappy.
- 7) The cake ... lovely. May I have another piece, please?
- 8) I don't like the music, it ... so sad!
- 9) Hello, Jane! You ... wonderful today.
- 10) The child ... very young. I don't believe he is ten years old.

#### B. Choose the right word to complete the sentences.

- 1) Please speak (quiet/quietly). 2) I can't understand why you can't be (quiet/quietly) when you see Rex. 3) Tom doesn't like the porridge, it tastes (unpleasant/unpleasantly). 4) Doris smiled (unpleasant/unpleasantly) and looked at me. 5) I feel (bad/badly). I have a terrible headache. 6) Bob cooks (good/well), he is a (good/well) cook. 7) Jane looks (unhappy/unhappily). What's the matter? 8) Ralph looked at me (unhappy/unhappily) and said he was sorry. 9) The song sounded rather (pleasant/pleasantly). 10) The snowdrops smelt so (sweet/sweetly).
- Work in pairs. Ask each other questions about cinema and theatre nowadays and answer them. Try and find out
  - · if cinema is popular nowadays
  - · how often people go to the cinema
  - · if and how television and videos influence cinema
  - $\cdot$  which of the two cinema or theatre is more popular now and why it is so
  - · what cinemas are the most popular in the place where you live
  - · where these cinemas are situated
  - · what adventure and action films your partner knows
  - · what kind of films are his/her favourite
  - · if he/she watches horror films and likes them
  - · if he/she often watches crime films and thrillers and why



#### **Focus**

Обрати внимание на следующие особенности употребления артиклей. С названиями театров, кинотеатров, музеев, картинных галерей обычно употребляется определенный артикль.

Museums

Galleries

the British Museum

the National Gallery

the Science Museum

the National Portrait Gallery

the Natural History Museum

the Tretyakov Gallery

255

Step Five

 $<sup>^1</sup>$  Глагол smell имеет две формы для прошедшего времени и второго причастия — smelled или smelt.

Cinemas
the Coliseum [,kplr'seiam]

Theatres
the Bolshoi Theatre
the Malyi Theatre

the Saturn ['sætən]

the Royal Opera House at Covent Garden

the Zenith ['zeniθ]

the Royal Shakespeare Theatre

the Rossia the Forum the National Theatre the Playhouse

5 Complete the sentences. Use articles (a, the) where necessary.

B

This guide-book gives you information about Washington, D.C. Here you can find \_\_(1)\_\_ texts about all the museums of \_\_(2)\_\_ city. For example, on \_\_(3)\_\_ page 56 you can read about \_\_(4)\_\_ National Museum of American History and \_\_(5)\_\_ some other museums as well. Children are often taken to \_\_(6)\_\_ Natural History Museum where they spend hours learning about how life developed on \_\_(7)\_\_ planet. Another must for \_\_(8)\_\_ visitor to Washington, D.C. is \_\_(9)\_\_ National Air and Space Museum, possibly \_\_(10)\_\_ most popular of Washington's museums and \_\_(11)\_\_ most visited museum of \_\_(12)\_\_ world.

6 Learn some new words and word combinations. Listen to the tape, (90), and repeat.

A.

compose [kəm'pəʊz] — сочинять, создавать receive [ri'siv] — получать, принимать

emotion [ı'məʊʃən] — чувство, эмоция full [fʊl] — полный чего-либо devote [dı'vəʊt] — посвящать inspire [in'spaiə] — вдохновлять graduate ['grædʒveit] — окончить высшее учебное заведение conduct [kən'dʌkt] — дирижировать

conductor [kən'dʌktə] — дирижер dead [ded] — мертвый; увяд-ший be based [beɪst] on — быть основанным на чем-либо

B.

compose: to compose music, to compose an opera, to compose a ballet. Bizet ['bi:zeɪ] composed an opera called "Carmen".

composer: Mozart ['moutsa:t] was a famous composer.

receive: 1) to receive a letter, to receive calls from school; 2) to receive visitors, guests¹. We haven't received your letter yet. Did you receive many presents on your birthday? He received his visitors with a smile.

emotion: strong emotions, an uncomfortable emotion, to control one's emotions. Love and hate are emotions. Happiness is an emotion too.

full: a full glass of milk, a house full of guests for the party, to be full of sth. The hall was full of people. Her life is full of excitement. The packet is half-full. A full-time student.

devote: to devote sth to sb/sth. Eric devotes all his free time to playing football. John has devoted most of his time to his painting. He devoted himself to writing music. A devoted friend.

be devoted to sb/sth: We are devoted to our country.

inspire: to inspire a poet, to inspire a painter, to inspire the audience. What inspired you to write poems?

graduate: to graduate from a university, to graduate from college. My uncle graduated from Oxford in 2002.

conduct: to conduct a work of music, to conduct an orchestra. Tchaikovsky conducted the first performance of his Sixth Symphony.

conductor: a famous conductor. Our music teacher is also the conductor of our school orchestra.

dead: dead flowers, dead animals, dead bodies. The plant was dead because it hadn't got enough water and sun.

be based on: The story is based on real life. The film is based on a true story.

<sup>1</sup> a guest [gest] — гость

<sup>9-</sup>Афанасьева, 8 кл.

#### 7 A. Match the words in the two columns.

- 1) to receive
- a) an orchestra
- 2) to compose
- b) a composer
- 3) to be full of
- c) letters
- 4) to graduate from
- d) a symphony
- 5) to devote to
- e) flowers
- 6) to inspire
- f) a university/conservatoire
- 7) to conduct
- g) one's parents
- B. Write your own sentences with the new words.



#### Focus

В английском языке существуют два слова, которые соответствуют русскому слову концерт:

- a concert ['kɒnsət] публичное исполнение музыкальных произведений и других номеров по определенной программе;
- a concerto [ken'tʃɜːtəʊ] крупное музыкальное произведение для сольного инструмента в сопровождении оркестра.

We went to a concert of Vivaldi's music.

Tchaikovsky's First Piano **Concerto** is one of the best-loved melodies of all times.

# 8 A. Read the text and say which of these facts were not mentioned in it.

- 1) What people thought of Tchaikovsky's music in his time and what they think of it today.
- 2) How Tchaikovsky started composing music.
- 3) Tchaikovsky's career in music.
- 4) Tchaikovsky's student's years.
- 5) The ballets he composed.
- 6) The operas he composed.
- 7) What countries the composer visited in Europe.
- 8) The composer's last music piece.







### P. I. Tchaikovsky and His Music

Peter Ilyich Tchaikovsky (1840—1893) is one of the most important figures in the history of music. He wrote some of the best-loved melodies of all times. His ballet music is some of the happiest and most tuneful<sup>1</sup> music ever written.

By the end of his life, in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century Tchaikovsky was known as the greatest living composer. However, at the beginning of his career, his compositions were not always well received. Tchaikovsky's music, which is so popular today, was at the time considered to be very modern and different. Some people thought it was too sentimental and emotional. But audiences everywhere came to love Tchaikovsky's musical style which was full of feeling and could excite them.

Tchaikovsky was born in Votkinsk, Russia, in 1840. Young Peter showed an early interest in music. He was given piano lessons at the age of five and very soon he learned to play better than his teacher. His mother died when he was fourteen, he felt unhappy and began to compose music which helped him. At the age of twenty-three he became a full-time student at St. Petersburg Conservatory [kən'sɜ:vətəri]. He graduated from it and was offered a post at the Moscow Conservatory, where he taught for the next twelve years. Then he devoted himself to composing.

His music was often inspired by Russian folk<sup>2</sup> tunes and includes some of the world's best-loved melodies such as the "Romeo

<sup>2</sup> folk [fəʊk] — фольклорный, народный

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> tuneful ['tju:nfəl] — мелодичный

['rəʊmiəʊ] and Juliet Fantasy Overture ['əʊvətjʊə]" and his First Piano Concerto [kən'tʃɜ:təʊ]. His ballets — "Swan Lake", "Sleeping Beauty" and "The Nutcracker" — are still among the most popular ballets.

Between 1888 and 1893 Tchaikovsky visited Europe and the USA conducting his own works. In 1893 he conducted the first performance of his Sixth Symphony ['sımfəni]. He called it the "Pathetique" (full of feeling), saying, "It is based on so much emotion and feeling that when I composed this work, I found myself crying." Tchaikovsky considered this to be his greatest composition; it was also his last. Less than two weeks later he was dead.

B. Listen to the tape, (91), and read the text again after it.

- 9 Read the text about Tchaikovsky again and find in it sentences that prove<sup>1</sup> the following.
  - 1) Tchaikovsky's music is not forgotten.
  - 2) The beginning of Tchaikovsky's career in music was not successful.
  - 3) Tchaikovsky's music is full of emotion.
  - 4) Peter Tchaikovsky was a child prodigy.
  - 5) Young Tchaikovsky left his home to study music.
  - 6) Many years of Tchaikovsky's life are connected with Moscow.
  - 7) Tchaikovsky composed three ballets.
  - 8) Tchaikovsky spent some time abroad.
  - 9) The Sixth Symphony was Tchaikovsky's swan song<sup>2</sup>.



# Social English

10 A. Learn to express your opinion<sup>3</sup> in English.

I think...

I believe...
In my opinion...

In my view [vju:]...

As I see it...

по-моему, мне кажется

To my mind [maind]...
If you ask me...

1 to prove [pru:v] — доказывать

<sup>3</sup> opinion [ə'pɪпjəп] — мнение

Agreeing

That's just what I think.
Yes, that's true.
I fully agree.
I couldn't agree more.
I am of the same opinion.

Disagreeing

I see what you mean but...
It may be right but...
Well, I'm not so sure.
I can't agree with you here.
I shouldn't say so.
Not at all!

B. Work in pairs. Express your opinions on the following. React to them.

Example: Chinese food

— If you ask me, Chinese food tastes too unusual. I can't say that I like it.

— Yes, that's true. I had it once and didn't enjoy it at all. or: — I shouldn't say so. I had it once and rather enjoyed it.

- 1) the film you watched recently
- 2) pop music
- 3) rock music
- 4) the book you are reading
- 5) symphony music

- 6) dangerous sports
- 7) folk dancing
- 8) a group or a singer popular
- at the moment
- 9) travelling
- 10) shopping

🚻 Listen to the song, 📻 (92), and sing along.

### Pasadena<sup>1</sup>

(Karen and Alice Maywood)

Come with me to Pasadena, Today at ten we will arrive. I have been in Pasadena For a great deal of my life.

Refrain: Come with me to Pasadena
If you want to have some fun.
Watch the dancing seniorinas
In the heat<sup>2</sup> of the sun.

When I woke up today
I heard someone say,
"Girl, it's raining
And they're expecting<sup>3</sup> snow."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> swan song ['swon,son] = the last performance, speech or piece of work in the career of a well-known person

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Pasadena [,pæsə'di:nə] — a city in California, not far from Los Angeles. The city was founded in 1894. It's a famous place for holiday-making.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> heat [hi:t] — жара

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> to expect [ik'spekt] — ожидать

#### Refrain

And it's morning I knew What I had to do — Take the next plane And finally go.

Refrain

# Do It on Your Own

## 12 Use prepositions where necessary.

1) Young Albert has always been devoted ... music. 2) The garden was full ... beautiful flowers — pansies, daisies, poppies and bluebells. 3) The libretto ... the opera was based ... an old Italian legend. 4) John devoted himself ... writing songs. 5) We went ... a concert of Prokofiev's music. 6) Our flat is not very large and we receive ... guests ... the living room. 7) Jane graduated ... college three years ago. 8) The famous ballet "The Nutcracker" ... Tchaikovsky is based ... the fairy-tale of the same name ... Hofmann. 9) Hard rock is the kind of music not ... everybody's taste. 10) Mr Morrison was a man ... honour and always kept his word.

# Write English equivalents for these.

А. Пахнуть сладко, чувствовать себя хорошо, чувствовать себя плохо, выглядеть молодо, звучать приятно, разговаривать холодно, смотреть сердито, звучать громко, разговаривать громко, быть на вкус сладким.

**В.** Принимать гостей, сочинять музыку, музыка, наполненная чувством, заканчивать консерваторию, известный дирижер, преданный друг, быть основанным на сказке, мертвая птица, посвятить симфонию родителям, сочинить балет, посвятить свою жизнь пению, вдохновлять аудиторию, дирижировать оркестром, настоящее вдохновение.

#### Dear All.

We hope you have enjoyed your English. See you again next school year. Enjoy your summer holidays!

The authors

\* \* \*

# Англо-русский словарь

# A

an ache [eik] боль a backache ['bækeik] боль в спине an earache ['iəreik] боль в vxe a headache ['hedeik] головная боль a stomachache ['stamək,eik] боль в животе to act [ækt] 1) действовать, поступать; 2) исполнять (роль), играть (meamp.) to act in a performance играть в спектакле an actor ['æktər] актер an actress ['æktris] актриса an acrobat\* ['ækrəbæt] акробат an adjective\* ['æфікtіv] прилагательное an advantage [əd'va:ntidʒ] преимущество an advertisement [əd'v3:tismənt] реклама to agree [э'gri:] соглашаться to agree to sth/with sb соглашаться с чем-л./кем-л. air [eə] воздух in the open air на открытом воздухе alcohol ['ælkəhpl] алкоголь alive [ə'laɪv] живой all [э:1] все, весь, всё, вся at all cobcem, bobce an alligator ['ælıgeıtə] аллигатор along\* [ə'lɒŋ] вдоль, по an alphabet ['ælfəbet] алфавит alphabetically [,ælfə'betikəli] в алфавитном порядке already [o:l'red1] уже also ['o:lsou] тоже, также altogether\* [,o:ltə'qeðə] в целом among [э'mʌn] среди ancient ['emfənt] древний another [э'плдэ] другой an anteater ['ænt,i:tə] муравьед to appear [ə'piə] появляться to applaud [ə'plo:d] аплодировать applause [ə'plɔ:z] аплодисменты a storm of applause шквал (буря) аплодисментов

<sup>\*</sup> Звездочкой обозначены слова, которые встречаются в учебнике 1—2 раза и не предназначены для заучивания.

an arena [ə'ri:nə] арена to arrive [ə'raɪv] прибывать to arrive at/in sth прибывать в an arrival [ə'raɪvəl] прибытие to associate [ə'səuficit] ассоциировать an association [э,səusi'eɪ[ən] ассоциация an athlete ['æθli:t] спортсмен, атлет athletic [æθ'letik] атлетический athletics [æθ'letiks] атлетика attention [ə'ten[ən] внимание to pay attention обращать внимание attentive [э'tentiv] внимательный to be attentive to sb/sth быть внимательным к кому-л./чему-л. an audience ['o:diens] аудитория an autumn ['э:təm] осень a badge [bæd;] значок badminton ['bædmintən] бадминтон to bake\* [beik] выпекать хлеб a balcony ['bælkəni] балкон a ballet ['bælei] балет a band [bænd] музыкальная группа, оркестр a banjo\* ['bænфэυ] банджо barefoot\* ['beəfut] босой, босоногий to walk barefoot ходить босиком baseball ['beisbo:l] бейсбол based (on) [beist] основанный (на) a battle ['bætl] битва to bathe\* [beið] купаться a beech [bi:tf] бук behaviour [bi'heivjə] поведение to belong [bɪ'lɒŋ] принадлежать to belong to sb/sth принадлежать кому-л./чему-л. besides [bi'saidz] кроме, кроме того between [bi'twi:n] между (двумя объектами) a bicycle ['baisikəl] велосипед bilingual [bar'lıngwəl] двуязычный a biscuit ['biskit] печенье a blackbird ['blakba:d] дрозд a bluebell\* ['blu:bel] колокольчик a bookworm\* ['bukws:m] книжный червь (перен.) i border ['bo:də] 1) n граница; 2) v граничить

to border on sth граничить с чем-л. а bow\* [bau] поклон a box [boks] ложа a box office ['boks, ofis] театральная касса boxing ['boksin] бокс brand-new [,brænd 'nju:] новый, с иголочки to breathe [bri:ð] дышать a brick [brik] кирпич to bring [brin] приносить to bring back вернуть a buffalo ['bʌfələu] буйвол, бизон budget ['bʌʤɪt] 1) n бюджет; 2) v распределять время a buffet ['bufei] буфет to build [bild] строить a building ['bildin] здание, строение a butterfly ['bʌtəflaɪ] бабочка by [bai] у, около, рядом, возле, при by and by постепенно, мало-помалу a café ['kæfei] кафе to call [ko:1] звонить, звать a can\* [kæn] консервная банка a canary [kə'neəri] канарейка a candidate ['kændidit] кандидат a candy (AmE) ['kændi] конфета a car park ['ka: ,pa:k] стоянка для машин carbon dioxide\* [,ka:bən dai'nksaid] углекислый газ a carnation ['ka:neifən] гвоздика a carpenter ['ka:pintə] плотник cardboard ['ka:dbo:d] картон a carton\* ['ka:tn] пакет (упаковка) a category ['kætigəri] категория a chain [tfcɪn] цепь a golden chain золотая цепь a chain of mountains горная цепь а character ['kænktə] герой (действующее лицо пьесы, литературного произведения) charming\* ['tfa:min] очаровательный a chemist's ['kemists] аптека childless ['tfaildles] бездетный a chin\* [tʃɪn] подбородок china ['tfainə] фарфор

chips (AmE) [tʃɪps] хрустящий картофель a chorus\* ['ko:rəs] xop a chrysanthemum [kri'sænӨіməm] хризантема a cinema ['sinimə] кино, кинотеатр a circle ['sз:kəl] бельэтаж a circus ['sз:kəs] цирк to go to the circus пойти в цирк to take sb to the circus сводить кого-л. в цирк civilization [,sıvəlar'zeтfən] цивилизация a climate ['klaimit] климат to climb [klaim] взбираться, лезть наверх a cloakroom ['kloukrum] гардероб (в театре) a clown\* [klaun] клоун a coast [kəust] побережье to collect [kə'lekt] собирать a collection [kə'lek[ən] коллекция colloquial\* [kə'ləukwiəl] разговорный a column ['kpləm] колонна a comedy ['kpmədi] комедия a committee [kə'miti] комитет common ['kpmən] обычный, часто встречающийся to compete [kəm'pit] соревноваться a competition [,kpmpi'tɪʃən] соревнование a complication [,kpmpli'keifən] осложнение to develop complications вызывать осложнения to compose [kəm'pəuz] сочинять a composer [kəm'pəuzə] композитор a composition [,kpmpə'zɪ[ən] сочинение a concert ['kpnsət] концерт a concerto [kən'tʃз:təu] концерт (муз. произведение) to conduct [kən'dʌkt] дирижировать to conduct an orchestra дирижировать оркестром a conductor [kən'dʌktə] дирижер a conference ['konfərəns] конференция to connect [kə'nekt] соединять to connect sb/sth to sb/sth соединить кого-л./что-л. с кем-л./чем-л. a conservatory [kən'sз:vətəri] консерватория to consider [kən'sıdə] полагать to consider doing sth обдумывать какое-л. действие to be considered to be считаться кем-л. a continent ['kuntinent] континент a cooker (AmE) ['kukə] плита a cookie (AmE) ['kuki] печенье (домашнее) a cornflower ['ko:nflavə] василек

a costume ['kpstju:m] костюм (meamp.) cotton ['kptn] хлопок cough [kvf] 1) n кашель; 2) v кашлять to have a bad cough сильно кашлять a countryside ['kantrisaid] деревня, сельская местность a coyote\* ['kэлэut] койот a crocodile ['krokədail] крокодил а стом [кгэบ] ворона to cultivate ['kaltiveit] выращивать, культивировать culture ['kʌltʃə] культура to cure [kivə] вылечить to cure of sth вылечить от чего-л. a curtain ['kз:tn] занавес to cut [knt] резать to cut down рубить, срубать to cycle ['saikəl] кататься на велосипеде cycling ['saiklin] катание на велосипеде a daffodil ['dæfədil] нарцисс a daisy ['deizi] маргаритка, ромашка to damage ['dæmid;] повреждать, наносить ущерб a dandelion ['dændılaıən] одуванчик danger ['deind; э] опасность dangerous ['deind;эгэз] опасный dead [ded] мертвый deep [di:p] глубокий deeply ['di:plɪ] глубоко a derivative\* [di'rivətiv] производное слово a desert ['dezət] пустыня to destroy [di'stroi] разрушать to develop [di'velap] развивать to develop into sb/sth превратиться в кого-л./что-л. to devote (to) [di'vout] посвятить to devote oneself to посвятить себя devoted [di'vəutid] преданный а diabetes\* [,darə'biti:z] сахарная болезнь, диабет ( $me\partial$ .) a dictionary ['dik[ənəri] словарь a dictionary entry словарная статья a diet ['daɪət] диета a dimple\* ['dimpəl] ямочка a dinosaur ['daməsə:] динозавр

to disagree [.disə'qri:] не соглашаться

to disappear [,disə'piə] исчезнуть a disc [disk] диск a disco ['diskəu] дискотека to discover [dis'kavə] сделать открытие, открыть a discovery [dis'kʌvəri] открытие а dodo\* ['dəudəu] дронт (палеонт.) a dolphin\* ['dplfin] дельфин domestic\* [də'mestik] домашний to domesticate\* [də'mestikeit] приручать (о животных) a dragonfly ['drægənflai] стрекоза a drama ['dra:mə] драма a dramatist ['dræmətist] драматург a duel\* ['dju:əl] дуэль a drug [drag] наркотик a drugstore (AmE) ['drAgsto:] аптека a dump [damp] свалка a dustbin ['dastbin] мусорный бак

### E

each [i:tf] каждый earth [3:0] земля easy ['i:zi] легкий easily ['i:zɪli] легко an ecologist [i:'kpləфıst] эколог ecology [i:'kpləcţi] экология an edelweiss ['eɪdlvaɪs] эдельвейс electricity [т,lek'trisəti] электричество an elephant ['elifənt] слон an elevator (AmE) ['eliveitə] лифт an elm [elm] вяз an emblem ['embləm] эмблема emotion [ı'məʊ[ən] эмоция, чувство emotional [r'məufənəl] эмоциональный endangered [m'demdəd] исчезающий, вымирающий energy ['enədʒi] энергия enough [I'nAf] достаточно an entertainment [,entə'teɪnmənt] развлечение environment [in'vaiərənmənt] окружающая среда an event [i'vent] событие ever ['evə] когда-нибудь evergreen(s) ['evəgri:n] вечнозеленые растения to examine [ıg'zæmın] осматривать (внимательно)

an example [ig'za:mpəl] пример for example например except\* [ik'sept] кроме to excite [ik'sait] возбуждать, волновать excited [ik'saitid] взволнованный exciting [ık'saıtıŋ] волнующий an exercise ['eksəsaiz] упражнение (исчисл.), физическая активность (неисto expand\* [ik'spænd] распространять, расширять to expect\* [ik'spekt] ожидать expensive [ik'spensiv] дорогой an expedition [,ekspi'dɪʃən] экспедиция to explain [ik'splein] объяснять extinct [ik'stinkt] исчезнувший, вымерший a fact [fækt] факт in fact в сущности a factory ['fæktəri] фабрика a fall (AmE) [fo:l] осень to fall [fo:l] падать to fall in love влюбиться fantastic [fæn'tæstik] фантастический, потрясающий fast [fɑ:st] 1) adj быстрый; 2) adv быстро a faucet (AmE) ['fo:sit] водопроводный кран fauna ['fɔ:nə] фауна, животный мир a feather\* ['feðə] перо a field [fi:ld] поле a figure ['fi:gə] цифра, фигура a figure skating ['fi:gə ,skeitiŋ] фигурное катание а film [film] 1) кинофильм; 2) кинопленка an action film боевик an adventure film приключенческий фильм a crime film детектив a horror film фильм ужасов a psychological film психологическая драма a science fiction film научно-фантастический фильм a fir (tree) [fз:] ель a flamingo [flə'mɪŋgəʊ] фламинго flora ['flo:гə] флора, растительный мир to flow [flow] течь to flow east (north, etc) течь на восток (север и т. д.) to flow into the ocean впадать в океан

folk [fouk] народный to follow ['fbləv] следовать за to follow sth следовать чему-л. following ['fɒləʊɪŋ] следующий on the following day на следующий день a foot [fot] 1) ступня; 2) фут (единица измерения длины = 12 дюймов = = 0.3048 mto forget [fə'qet] забывать a forget-me-not [fə'gət mi ,nɒt] незабудка to found [faund] основывать a foyer ['foiei] done French fries ['frentf ,fraiz] жареный картофель fried\* [fraid] жареный fresh [fref] свежий to look fresh выглядеть свежим, отдохнувшим fresh water пресная вода full [ful] полный to be full of быть наполненным full-time student студент-очник future ['fju:tʃə] 1) adj будущий; 2) n будушее in the near future в ближайшем будущем a gallery ['gæləп] галерка gallon\* ['gælən] галло́н (единица измерения объема = 8 пинт = 4,546 л) a game [qeim] urpa garbage ['ga:bid3] мусор a garbage can AmE ['gɑ:bɪʤ ,kæn] мусорный ящик gas(oline) AmE ['qæsəli:n] бензин geology [dar'pladai] геология a giraffe [dura:f] жираф a gladiator ['glædientə] гладиатор a globe\* [gləub] 1) глобус; 2) земной шар to go down (up) гаснуть; загораться (об огнях, свете) God [qpd] Bor gold [gəʊld] 1) n золото; 2) adj золотой golf [qulf] гольф good [gud] хороший to be good at sth уметь что-то хорошо делать a government ['gavənmənt] правительство to graduate ['græфuit] окончить высшее учебное заведение to graduate from university окончить университет grammar ['græmə] грамматика

a grizzly bear [,gпzli: 'beə] медведь гризли
to grow [gгэυ] выращивать, расти (о растениях)
to grow up расти (о животных и людях)
to grow into sb превращаться во что-л.
growth [grəυθ] рост
a guest [gest] гость
a gull [gʌl] чайка

#### H

a habit ['hæbit] привычка a habitat ['hæbitæt] место обитания half-full ['ha:f,ful] наполовину заполненный handy\* ['hændi] ловкий, умелый, рукастый hard [ha:d] 1) adj тяжелый, трудный; 2) adv усердно, упорно hardly ['ha:dli] едва a hare [heə] заяц harm [ha:m] вред a head [hed] голова to head возглавить health [helθ] здоровье healthy ['helθi] здоровый heat\* [hi:t] жара a hedgehog ['hedshog] еж herself [ha:'self] сама себя himself [him'self] сам себя a historian [hi'sto:riən] историк historic [hi'storik] исторический a hole\* [həul] нора homework ['həumws:k] домашнее задание an honour ['pno] честь a horn\* [ho:n] por to hunt [hant] охотиться to hurt [hз:t] причинять боль It hurts to walk. Больно ходить.

# I

ice [aɪs] лед
an ice hockey ['aɪs ,hɒki] хоккей на льду
imaginary [ɪ'mæʤɪnəri] воображаемый
an immigrant ['ɪmɪgrənt] иммигрант
impossible [ɪm'pɒsibəl] невозможный
to impress [ɪm'pres] производить впечатление

an impression [Im'prefn] впечатление to make an impression on sb производить впечатление на кого-л. to improvise\* ['improvaiz] импровизировать inch\*[int]] дюйм (единица измерения длины = 2,54 см) to include [in'klu:d] включать including [m/klu:din] включая industrial [in'dastrial] индустриальный, промышленный an influence ['influens] влияние an insect ['insekt] насекомое to inspire [in'spaiə] вдохновлять inspired [m'spared] вдохновленный to instruct\* [in'strakt] инструктировать, учить an interior\* [in'tierie] интерьер international [,intə'næ[ənəl] международный an interview ['intəviu:] интервью to introduce [,intrə'djus] представлять to introduce sb to sb представлять кого-л. кому-л. Let me introduce myself. Разрешите представиться. to invite [in'vait] приглашать to invite to some place приглашать куда-л.

to invite for dinner приглашать к обеду an invitation [invi'teifn] приглашение an island ['ailənd] остров isolation [,aisə'leifən] изоляция an item\* ['aitəm] пункт

### J

jazz [ʤæz] джаз jog [ʤɒg] 1) n бег трусцой; 2) v бегать трусцой to join [ʤɔɪn] присоединяться judo ['ʤuːdəv] дзюдо junk food ['ʤʌŋk ,fuːd] неполноценная пища just [ʤʌst] только что

# K

to keep [ki:p] держать
kilometre ['kılə,mi:tə] километр
a kind [kaınd] вид, род, разновидность
kind of своего рода
a kitten ['kıtn] котенок
a koala bear [kəʊ,ɑ:lə 'bcə] коала

a land [lænd] земля, суша a piece of land клочок суши, участок a language ['længwid] язык a parent language праязык large [la:ф] большой last [la:st] последний at last наконец а law\* [15:] закон to make laws создавать (писать) законы lazily ['leizili] лениво a leek [li:k] лук-порей length [lenθ] длина a librarian\* [laɪ'brərɪən] библиотекарь a library ['laɪbrəп] библиотека to lie [lai] лежать to lie on the river быть расположенным на реке a lift [lift] лифт liquid\* ['likwid] жидкость likes [larks] то, что нравится likes and dislikes любимые и нелюбимые (занятия, вещи) a lilac ['laɪlək] сирень a lion ['laɪən] лев a lizard\* ['lızəd] ящерица local ['ləukəl] местный long [lon] длинный a long jump [,lpn/флтр] прыжок в длину to look [luk] смотреть to look the word up смотреть слово в словаре a lorry ['lpп] грузовик to lose [lu:z] терять loud [laud] громкий loudly ['laudli] громко love [lav] любовь to be in love любить, быть влюбленным to fall in love влюбиться love of sth любовь к чему-л.

#### M

mad\* [mæd] сумасшедший magical ['mæʤikəl] волшебный

a maple ['meipəl] клен maybe ['meɪbi] может быть a meadow\* ['medəu] луг medical ['medikəl] медицинский a meal [mi:l] трапеза measure ['meʒə] 1) n измерение; 2) v мерить medicine ['medsən] 1) медицина; 2) лекарство a member ['membə] член to mention\* ['men[an] упоминать mentioned\* ['menfənd] упомянутый a metre ['mi:tə] метр a microscope ['maikrə,skəup] микроскоп mighty ['maiti] могущественный a mile\* [mail] миля (мера длины) mind [maind] ym, pasym a monkey ['mʌŋki] обезьяна monolingual [,monoullowell одноязычный moon [mu:n] луна а moor\* [тиг] вересковая пустошь moral\* ['mprəl] мораль mostly ['məustli] в основном to move [mu:v] двигаться a movie AmE ['mu:vi] кино multilingual [,malti'lingwəl] многоязычный music ['mju:zɪk] музыка a music band ['mju:zɪk ,bænd] музыкальная группа a musician [mju:'zɪʃən] музыкант myself [mar'self] cam

# N

a nationality [,næʃə'nælɪti] национальность
natural ['næʧərəl] естественный, натуральный, природный
nature ['neɪʧə] природа
necessary ['nesɪsəri] необходимый
to need ['niːd] нуждаться
a nightingale ['naɪtɪŋgeɪl] соловей
noble ['nəʊbəl] благородный
a noun\* [naʊn] имя существительное
nowadays ['naʊədeɪz] в наше время
a number ['nʌmbə] номер
a nutcracker\* ['nʌt,krækə] 1) обыкн. pl щипцы для орехов; 2) (the N.)
Щелкунчик

an oak [əuk] дуб official [ə'fi[əl] официальный only ['ounli] только an only child единственный ребенок an opera ['ppэгэ] опера an opera glasses бинокль an opinion [ə'pɪnjən] мнение an opossum [ə'pɒsəm] опоссум (зоол.) an opponent [ə'pəunənt] оппонент an orchestra ['э:kistrə] оркестр an orchestra pit\* ['o:kistrə,pit] оркестровая яма to organize ['э:gənaiz] организовывать an ostrich ['pstritf] crpayc other ['лðə] другие in other words другими словами others ['лðəz] другие an ounce [auns] унция (единица измерения веса = 28,35 г) ourselves [auə'selvz] мы сами over [auva] cBepx to overcome\* [,эuvə 'kлm] преодолеть an overture\* ['эυνэtjuə] увертюра an owl [aul] coba oxygen\* ['pksichan] кислород

## P

pain [pein] боль
to be in pain испытывать боль
painful ['peinfəl] болезненный
a palm [peim] пальма
a panda ['pændə] панда
pansies ['pænzis] анютины глазки (бот.)
a parachute ['pærəʃut] парашют
a polar bear [,pəulə 'beə] полярный медведь
a politician [,poll'tiʃən] политик
to pollute [pəˈlut] загрязнять
a polluter [pəˈlutə] человек, загрязняющий что-то
pollution [pəˈlutən] загрязнение
a poppy ['pupi] мак
popular ['popjulə] популярный
to be popular with sb пользоваться популярностью среди кого-л.

population [,popju'leifn] население possible ['posibəl] возможный whenever possible когда возможно wherever possible где возможно а pound\* [paund] фунт (единица измерения веса =  $0.453~\kappa$ г) power ['раиэ] сила, власть, мощь powerful ['pauəfəl] мошный practically ['præktɪkli] практически to prefer [pп'fз:] предпочитать to prefer sth to sth предпочитать что-л. чему-л. prehistoric [,pri:hi'storik] доисторический to prescribe [pri'skraib] прописывать to prescribe sb a medicine for sth прописывать кому-л. лекарство от чего-л. prescription [pri/skripfən] penent to write out a prescription for sth выписать рецепт от чего-л. a president ['prozident] президент previous\* ['pri:viəs] предыдущий a price [prais] цена probable ['probabal] вероятный probably ['probabli] вероятно a programme ['praugræm] программа to pronounce\* [pra'nauns] произносить pronunciation\* [prə,nansier[ən] произношение to protect [prə'tekt] защищать protected [prə'tektid] защищенный proud [praud] гордый to be proud of sb/sth гордиться кем-л./чем-л. to prove [pru:v] доказывать a puffin\* ['pʌfin] тýпик (зоол.) a pumpkin vine\* ['pampkin vain] тыквенный стебель (the) rich [пц] богатый (богатые) a rabbit ['ræbit] кролик а гасе [гез] забег, заезд a railroad\* ['reilroud] железная дорога a reaction\* [ri'æk[ən] реакция to reappear [,ri:ə'ріə] появиться вновь to receive [п'si:v] получать to receive guests [п'si:v, gests] принимать гостей to recite [п'sait] декламировать, читать наизусть a recording\* [п'kэ:dɪŋ] запись

to recycle [,ri:'saikəl] перерабатывать a regular(ly) ['regjulə(lı)] регулярный(но) relation [ri'leɪ[ən] 1) родственник; 2) отношение to relax [ri'læks] расслабляться religious [п'liфэs] религиозный to remember [п'membə] помнить to remember to do sth не забыть что-л. сделать a residence ['rezidəns] резиденция responsible [rɪ'spɒnsəbəl] ответственный to rise [raiz] подниматься, вставать to rise up подниматься to rise from the table вставать из-за стола a root [ru:t] корень a row [rəu] ряд rows of seats ряды кресел rubbish ['rabif] mycop rugby ['rʌgbɪ] регби safe\* [seif] безопасный same [seim] тот же самый at the same time в то же самое время to save [selv] chacath scenery ['si:nəп] (pl) декорации science ['saɪəns] наука science and technology наука и техника a science teacher учитель естественных наук a field of science область науки scientific [,saiən'tifik] научный a scientist ['saɪəntɪst] ученый a score [sko:] счет to score a goal забить гол What's the score? Какой счет? a screen [skri:n] экран a seagull ['si:gal] чайка to seek\* [si:k] искать to seem [si:m] казаться It seems to me. Мне кажется. a shamrock ['[æmrɒk] белый клевер, трилистник to share\* [[сэ] делиться to shave\* [feiv] бриться a sidewalk (AmE) ['saidwo:k] тротуар

silent ['sailont] немой (о фильме)

```
27
```

Mittroder 11 - 4

silver ['sɪlvə] 1) n серебро; 2) adj серебряный since [sins] c Tex nop Kak a size [saiz] pasmep a skyscraper ['skai,skreipə] небоскреб slow [slou] медленный slowly ['slouli] медленно smell [smel] 1) n запах; 2) v пахнуть smoke [smouk] дым a snake [snerk] змея to sneeze [sni:z] чихать a snowdrop ['snəudrop] ландыш RRMes [lics] lios to solve\* [splv] разрешать (проблемы) sound [saund] 1) n sbyk; 2) v sbyyath to sound good звучать привлекательно species ['spi:fi:z] вид(ы) a speech [spi:tf] речь to make a speech произнести речь speechless ['spi:tfləs] онемевший a squirrel ['skwirəl] белка a stadium ['sterdiem] стадион a stage [steids] сцена a stalls [sto:lz] naprep a station ['sterfan] станция steel [sti:l] 1) n сталь; 2) adj стальной still [stil] все еще a stone [stoun] 1) камень; 2) стоун (единица измерения веса = 6.3 кг); 3) косточка a stove [stəuv] плита to stretch [stretf] простираться to stretch as far as простираться до to stretch far далеко простираться to stretch for miles простираться на многие километры (мили) to stretch east (north) простираться на восток (север) a structure ['straktfə] структура to strum\* [stram] бренчать, тренькать a style [stail] стиль such [satf] такой a sunflower ['sʌn,flaʊə] подсолнух support [sə'pɔ:t] 1) v поддерживать; 2) n поддержка to surround [sə'raund] окружать surroundings [sə'raundinz] (pl) окрестности to survive [sə'vaiv] выживать swallow ['swolou] 1) n ласточка; 2) v глотать

a tag question [,tæg 'kwestʃən] разделительный вопрос a talk [to:k] беседа, разговор a small talk\* светская беседа a talkie ['to:ki] звуковой фильм a tap [tæp] водопроводный кран taste [teist] 1) n вкус; 2) v пробовать Tastes differ. О вкусах не спорят. a team [ti:m] команда technology [tek'nplocy ] 1) техника; 2) технология a teenager\* ['ti:neɪʤə] подросток (тинейджер) a territory ['territori] территория themselves [ðəm'selvz] они сами a theory ['Өгэгг] теория a thistle ['θısəl] чертополох thrill [Onl] дрожь, трепет, восхищение thrilling ['Ordin] приводящий в трепет, восхищение a thriller ['Өпіә] приключенческий фильм a ticket ['tikit] билет a cinema ticket билет в кино a lottery ticket лотерейный билет a plane ticket билет на самолет a train ticket билет на поезд a ticket for a performance билет на представление a ticket to a place билет куда-л. a tiger ['taigə] тигр a tiger lily [,taiqə 'lili] тигровая лилия time [taɪm] 1) время; 2) раз several times несколько раз many times много раз the first time в первый раз toxic ['toksik] токсичный a tragedy ['træфədi] трагедия to tremble ['trembəl] дрожать trouble\* ['trabəl] беда, неприятность to be in trouble попасть в беду a truck AmE [trak] грузовик

a swan [swpn] лебедь

sweet [swi:t] сладкий

true [tru:] правдивый

a true friend настоящий друг

a symphony ['simfəni] симфония

truth [tru:θ] правда
truly ['tru:li] действительно
tundra ['tʌndrə] тундра
tuneful ['tju:nfəl] мелодичный
a tyrannosaurus\* [tɪ,rænə'sɔ:rəs] тираннозавр (разновидность динозавра)

# U

unfortunately [ʌnˈfɔːtʃənətli] к несчастью unpolluted [ʌn,pəˈluːtɪd] незагрязненный unwashed [ˌʌnˈwɒʃt] невымытый useless [ˈjuːsləs] бесполезный

# V

a valley ['væli] долина
a lily-of-the-valley ландыш
a violet ['vaɪəlɪt] фиалка
a virus\* ['vaɪərəs] вирус
a vocabulary [və'kæbjuləri] вокабуляр, словарь
a voice [vɔɪs] 1) голос; 2) залог
a volcano [vɒl'keɪnəʊ] вулкан

# W

to wait [west] ждать to wait for sb/sth ждать кого-л./что-л. a war [wo:] война warlike ['wɔ:laɪk] воинственный a washing machine [ˈwɒʃɪɪnmə,ʃiːn] стиральная машина waste [weist] отходы a water lily ['wo:tə ,lili] водяная лилия water skiing ['wo:tə ,ski:ɪŋ] катание на водных лыжах a water polo ['wɔ:tə ,pəuləu] водное поло a waterfall ['wo:təfɔ:l] водопад a way [wei] путь to weigh [wei] взвещивать a weight [weit] Bec weight lifting ['weit,liftin] поднятие тяжестей a whale\* [weil] кит a whistle\* ['wisəl] свисток a width [widθ] ширина wild [waild] дикий

wine\* [wain] вино
to wink\* [wiŋk] моргать, мигать
without [wið'aut] без
a wolf [wulf] волк
to wonder ['wʌndə] интересоваться
no wonder неудивительно
wood [wud] дерево
a woodpecker ['wud,pekə] дятел
wool [wul] шерсть
to work out ['wɜ:k aut] 1) тренироваться; 2) вырабатывать

# Y

а yard\* [jɑ:d] ярд ( $e\partial u$ ница измерения  $\partial$ лины = 91,44 см) yet [jet] еще yourself [jɔ:'self] ты сам yourselves [jɔ:'selvz] вы сами



a zebra ['zi:brə] зебра

# Таблица неправильных глаголов

be [bi:]	was/were [wbz]/[w3:]	been [bi:n]	быть	
become [bɪ'kʌm]	became [bi'keim]	become [bɪ'kʌm]	становиться, являться	
begin [bɪ'gɪn]	egin [bɪ'gɪn] began [bɪ'gæn]		начинать	
blow [blev]	blew [blu:]	blown [bleun]	дуть	
oreak [breik] broke [brəuk]		broken [brəʊk(ə)n]	ломать	
bring [brin]	brought [bro:t]	brought [bro:t]	приносить	
build [bɪld]	built [bilt]	built [bilt]	строить	
burn [bɜ:n]	burnt [b3:nt]	burnt [b3:nt]	жечь, гореть	
buy [baɪ]	bought [bo:t]	bought [bo:t]	покупать	
can [kæn]	could [kvd]		мочь	
catch [kætʃ]	caught [ko:t]	caught [ko:t]	схватить	
choose [ʧu:z]	chose [ʧəʊz]	chosen ['tʃəʊzn]	выбирать	
come [kʌm]	came [keim]	come [kʌm]	приходить	
cut [kʌt]	cut [knt]	cut [kʌt]	резать	
do [du:]	did [dɪd]	done [dʌn]	делать	
draw [dro:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [dro:n]	рисовать	
dream [dri:m] dreamed/dreamt [dremt]		dreamed/ dreamt[dremt]	мечтать	
drink [driŋk]	drank [dræŋk]	drunk [drʌŋk]	пить	
drive [draw]	drove [drəʊv]	driven ['drɪv(ə)n]	водить (маши- ну и т. п.)	
eat [i:t]	ate [et]	eaten ['i:tn]	есть	
fall [fɔ:l]	fell [fel]	fallen ['fɔ:lən]	падать	
fight [fart] fought [fo:t]		fought [fo:t]	драться, сра- жаться	
find [faɪnd]	found [faund]	found [faund]	находить	
fly [flai] flew [flu:]		flown [fləʊn]	летать	

# Продолжение таблицы

forget [fə'get]	forgot [fə'gɒt]	forgotten [fə'gɒtn]	забывать
get [get]	got [gpt]	got [gnt]	получать
give [gɪv]	gave [geɪv]	given ['gɪvn]	давать
go [gəʊ]	went [went]	gone [gpn]	идти, направ- ляться
grow [grəʊ]	grew [gru:]	grown [grəʊn]	pacmu
hang [hæŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	вешать
have [hæv]	had [hæd]	had [hæd]	иметь
hear [hɪə]	heard [h3:d]	heard [h3:d]	слышать
keep [ki:p]	kept [kept]	kept [kept]	держать, содер- жать
know [nəʊ]	knew [nju:]	known [nəʊn]	знать
learn [lɜːn]	learned/learnt [ls:nt]	learned/learnt [ls:nt]	учить
leave [liːv]	left [left]	left [left]	уезжать, поки- дать, остав- лять
let [let]	let [let]	let [let]	позволять, давать
lie [laɪ]	lay [ler]	lain [leɪn]	лежать
lose [luːz]	lost [lost]	lost [lpst]	терять
make [meɪk]	made [meɪd]	made [meɪd]	делать, изго- товлять
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant [ment]	значить, иметь в виду
meet [mi:t]	met [met]	met [met]	встречать
put [put]	put [pvt]	put [pvt]	класть
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]	читать
ride [raɪd]	rode [rəʊd]	ridden ['rɪdn]	ездить (вер- хом на лоша- ди, на велоси- педе)

ring [rɪŋ]	rang [ræŋ]	rung [raŋ]	звонить
run [rʌn]	ran [ræn]	run [rʌn]	бегать.
say [sei]	said [sed]	said [sed]	сказать
see [si:]	saw [so:]	seen [si:n]	видеть
send [send]	sent[sent]	sent[sent]	посылать
ski [ski:] skied [ski:d]		skied [ski:d]	кататься на лыжах
speak [spi:k]	spoke [spəʊk]	spoken ['spəʊk(ə)n]	говорить
spell [spel]	spelt[spelt]	spelt [spelt]	произносить по буквам
spend [spend]	spent [spent]	spent [spent]	тратить (день- ги); проводить (время)
stand [stænd]	stood [stud]	stood [stud]	стоять
strike [straik]	struck [strak]	struck [strak]	ударять, бить (о часах)
swim [swim]	swam [swæm]	swum [swam]	плавать
take [teik]	took [tuk]	taken ['teikən]	брать
teach [tiːtʃ]	taught [to:t]	taught [to:t]	учить, обучать
tell [tel]	told [təʊld]	told [təʊld]*	сказать, рас- сказать
think [θιŋk]	thought [θo:t]	thought [θɔ:t]	думать
understand [ʌndəˈstænd]	understood [ʌndəˈstʊd]	understood [ʌndə'stʊd]	понимать
wear [weə] wore [wo:]		worn [wo:n]	носить, быть одетым
win [wɪn]	won [wʌn]	won [wʌn]	выигрывать
write [rait]	wrote [rout]	written ['rɪtn]	писать

# Таблица перевода некоторых англо-американских единиц измерения в метрическую систему

## Меры длины

1 дюйм (inch) = 2,54 см 1 фут (foot) = 30,48 см

# Меры веса

1 унция (oz) = 28,35 г 1 фунт (pound) = 373,2 г

# Меры объема

1 галлон (gallon) = 
$$\begin{cases} 4,546 \text{ л } (Bеликобритания) \\ 3,785 \text{ л } (CШA) \end{cases}$$
1 пинта (pint) = 
$$\begin{cases} 0,57 \text{ л } (Bеликобритания) \\ 0,47 \text{ л } (CШA) \end{cases}$$

# Содержание

Unit 1. Visiting the USA	
Step One	3 12
Buch I wo	20
Step Three	28
Step Four	38
Step Five	00
Unit 2. English — a Global Language	
Step One	49
Step Two	58
Step Three	66
Step Four	75
Step Five	82
Unit 3. Living Things Around Us	
	91
Duch one	100
Deep Ino	107
Ducp Inice	114
Duop 1 out 111111111111111111111111111111111	123
Diep 1110	
Unit 4. The ABC of Ecology	
Duch out	132
Duch I no i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	140
Duch Thice it it is it i	150
Dicprodi	156
Step Five	162
Unit 5. Keeping Fit	
The state of the s	170
Duck One	177
Duch I wo	186
Doop into the territory and the second	194
Duch I out 11111111111111111111111111111111111	202
preh tive	-02

# Unit 6. Our Favourite Pastimes

Step One			214
Step Two			222
Step Three			
Step Four			242
Step Five			
Англо-русский словарь			263
Таблица неправильных	глаголов	3	282
Таблица перевода неко англо-американских ед в метрическую систему	циниц изм		285
в метрическую систему			